



# Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009

## 2009 CHAPTER 22

### PART 1

#### APPRENTICESHIPS, STUDY AND TRAINING

#### [<sup>F1</sup>CHAPTER ZA1

#### THE INSTITUTE FOR APPRENTICESHIPS

---

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** Pt. 1 Ch. ZA1 inserted (1.4.2017) by Enterprise Act 2016 (c. 12), s. 44(5), Sch. 4 para. 2; S.I. 2017/346, reg. 2(a)

#### *Establishment*

#### **ZA1 The Institute for Apprenticeships**

- (1) A body corporate known as the Institute for Apprenticeships is established.
- (2) In this Act that body is referred to as “the IfA”.
- (3) Schedule A1 makes further provision about the IfA.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *General duties and functions*

#### **ZA2 General duties**

- (1) So far as relevant, and subject to any notice given by the Secretary of State under subsection (2), in performing its functions the IfA must have regard to—
  - (a) the reasonable requirements of industry, commerce, finance, the professions and other employers regarding education and training within the IfA's remit;
  - (b) the reasonable requirements of persons who may wish to undertake education and training within the IfA's remit;
  - (c) the need to ensure that education and training within the IfA's remit is of an appropriate quality;
  - (d) the need to ensure that education and training within the IfA's remit represents good value in relation to financial resources provided out of public funds;
  - (e) any information provided to it by any person designated by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (2) The Secretary of State may give a notice in writing to the IfA setting out other matters to which the IfA must have regard when performing its functions.
- (3) The Secretary of State may not give a notice under subsection (2) more than once in any financial year (within the meaning given by section ZA6(6)), except as provided by subsection (4).
- (4) Where in a financial year—
  - (a) a notice is given under subsection (2), and
  - (b) after the giving of the notice a new Parliament meets for the first time,
 the Secretary of State may give one further notice under subsection (2) in that year.
- (5) The IfA must perform its functions efficiently and effectively.
- (6) For the purposes of this section, education or training is within the IfA's remit if the education or training is or may be provided in the course of an approved English apprenticeship.
- (7) Subsection (1) and any notice under subsection (2) do not apply in relation to functions that are—
  - (a) delegated by directions under section ZA4, or
  - (b) conferred by regulations under section ZA5,
 unless the directions or regulations provide for them to apply in relation to the functions.
- (8) Where directions or regulations so provide, the directions or regulations—
  - (a) may provide for any education or training to which the functions relate to be treated as within the IfA's remit for the purposes of this section;
  - (b) may provide for subsection (1) and any notice under subsection (2) to apply in relation to the functions with such modifications as the Secretary of State thinks fit.
- (9) The Secretary of State must—
  - (a) publish in such manner as the Secretary of State thinks fit any notice under subsection (2), and
  - (b) lay a copy of it before Parliament.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **ZA3 Provision of advice and assistance to the Secretary of State etc**

- (1) The IfA may, if requested to do so by the Secretary of State, provide the Secretary of State with advice and assistance in connection with the Secretary of State's functions relating to apprenticeships in relation to England.
- (2) The Secretary of State's functions mentioned in subsection (1) include those under section 100(1A) or otherwise relating to the funding of apprenticeships in relation to England.

### **ZA4 Delegation of functions to the IfA by Secretary of State**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by direction delegate to the IfA any of the Secretary of State's functions relating to apprenticeships in relation to England.
- (2) The functions may be delegated—
  - (a) to any extent that the Secretary of State specifies in the direction, and
  - (b) subject to any conditions that the Secretary of State specifies in the direction.
- (3) The Secretary of State's functions mentioned in subsection (1) include those under section 100(1A) or otherwise relating to the funding of apprenticeships in relation to England.

### **ZA5 Conferral of further functions on the IfA by regulations**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations confer on the IfA such functions relating to apprenticeships in relation to England as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (2) A function conferred by regulations under subsection (1) may involve the exercise of a discretion.

### **ZA6 Annual and other reports**

- (1) As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of each financial year, the IfA must prepare an annual report.
- (2) An annual report is a report which includes—
  - (a) a description of what the IfA has done during the year, including a description of what the IfA has done as a result of any notice given by the Secretary of State under section ZA2(2),
  - (b) the statement of accounts prepared for that year under paragraph 11 of Schedule A1, and
  - (c) such other provision as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (3) The IfA must send the report to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable after it has been prepared.
- (4) The Secretary of State must lay a copy of the report before Parliament.
- (5) The Secretary of State may direct the IfA to prepare, and send to the Secretary of State, as soon as reasonably practicable a report on any matter relating to its functions.
- (6) In this section “financial year” means—
  - (a) the period beginning with the day on which this section comes into force and ending with the following 31 March, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) each successive period of 12 months.

### *Compliance*

#### **ZA7 Secretary of State directions where the IfA fails to discharge duties etc**

If the Secretary of State is satisfied that the IfA—

- (a) has failed to discharge a duty imposed on it by or under this Act, or  
 (b) has acted or is proposing to act in an unreasonable way in exercising any function,

the Secretary of State may give the IfA such directions as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

### *Directions*

#### **ZA8 General provision about directions under Chapters ZA1 and A1**

- (1) This section applies to a direction given to the IfA by the Secretary of State under this Chapter or Chapter A1.  
 (2) The IfA must comply with the direction.  
 (3) The direction must be in writing.]

## [<sup>F2</sup>CHAPTER A1

### APPRENTICESHIPS: ENGLAND

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F2** Pt. 1 Ch. A1 inserted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 1](#) (with [Sch. 1 para. 28](#)); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

### [<sup>F3</sup>Introductory]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F3** S. A1 cross-heading inserted (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), s. 44(5), [Sch. 4 para. 3](#); S.I. 2017/346, reg. 2(a)

#### **A1 Meaning of “approved English apprenticeship” etc**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Chapter.  
 (2) An approved English apprenticeship is an arrangement which—  
 (a) takes place under an approved English apprenticeship agreement, or  
 (b) is an alternative English apprenticeship,

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and, in either case, satisfies any conditions specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State.

- (3) An approved English apprenticeship agreement is an agreement which—
  - (a) provides for a person (“the apprentice”) to work for another person for reward in a sector for which [<sup>F4</sup>an approved apprenticeship standard has been published under section A2],
  - (b) provides for the apprentice to receive training in order to assist the apprentice to achieve the approved apprenticeship standard in the work done under the agreement, and
  - (c) satisfies any other conditions specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (4) An alternative English apprenticeship is an arrangement, under which a person works, which is of a kind described in regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Regulations under subsection (4) may, for example, describe arrangements which relate to cases where a person—
  - (a) works otherwise than for another person;
  - (b) works otherwise than for reward.
- (6) A person completes an approved English apprenticeship if the person achieves the approved apprenticeship standard while doing an approved English apprenticeship.
- (7) The “approved apprenticeship standard”, in relation to an approved English apprenticeship, means the standard which applies in relation to the work to be done under the apprenticeship (see section A2).

#### Textual Amendments

- F4** Words in s. A1(3)(a) substituted (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), s. 44(5), [Sch. 4 para. 4](#); [S.I. 2017/346](#), reg. 2(a)

#### <sup>F5</sup>Publication of standards and assessment plans

#### Textual Amendments

- F5** Ss. A2-A2I and cross-headings substituted for s. A2 (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), s. 44(5), [Sch. 4 para. 5](#); [S.I. 2017/346](#), reg. 2(a)

## A2 Apprenticeship standards and assessment plans

- (1) The IfA must publish—
  - (a) standards for such sectors of work as the IfA considers appropriate for the purposes of this Chapter, and
  - (b) assessment plans in respect of published standards.
- (2) Each standard must—
  - (a) describe the sector of work to which it relates, and
  - (b) if there is more than one standard for the sector, describe the kind of work within the sector to which it relates.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) Each standard must set out the outcomes that persons seeking to complete an approved English apprenticeship are expected to attain in order to achieve the standard.
- (4) An assessment plan in respect of a standard is a plan in accordance with which a person's attainment of the outcomes set out in the standard is to be assessed.
- (5) Each assessment plan must—
  - (a) specify the standard to which it relates, and
  - (b) set out the proposed arrangements for evaluating the quality of any assessment provided for by the plan.
- (6) The following provisions supplement the provision made by this section—
  - section A2A makes provision about the preparation of apprenticeship standards and assessment plans;
  - sections A2B to A2D make provision related to ensuring the quality of apprenticeship assessments;
  - sections A2E and A2F make provision about the review, revision and withdrawal of apprenticeship standards and assessment plans;
  - section A2G makes provision for independent examinations of apprenticeship standards and assessment plans;
  - section A2H makes provision about the maintenance of a published list of apprenticeship standards and assessment plans;
  - section A2I provides for the automatic transfer to the IfA of copyright in apprenticeship standards and assessment plans.

## **A2A Preparation of apprenticeship standards and assessment plans**

- (1) Each standard or assessment plan published under section A2 must have been prepared by a group of persons and approved by the IfA.
- (2) The group of persons that prepared a standard or assessment plan published under section A2 must have been approved by the IfA for the purposes of this section.
- (3) The IfA may provide advice or assistance to a group of persons in connection with the preparation of a standard or assessment plan.
- (4) The IfA must publish—
  - (a) information about matters that it takes into account when deciding whether or not to approve standards or plans for the purposes of subsection (1);
  - (b) information about matters that it takes into account when deciding whether or not to approve groups of persons for the purposes of subsection (2).
- (5) When making a decision of the kind mentioned in subsection (4)(a) or (b) in a particular case, the IfA may also take into account such other matters as it considers appropriate in the case in question.
- (6) Information published under subsection (4) may be revised or replaced, and the IfA must publish under that subsection any revised or replacement information.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Quality assurance [<sup>F6</sup>of apprenticeship assessments etc]

#### Textual Amendments

- F6** Words in s. A2B cross-heading inserted (16.8.2017) by [Technical and Further Education Act 2017 \(c. 19\), s. 47\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 13; S.I. 2017/844, reg. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#)

#### A2B Evaluation of quality of apprenticeship assessments

- (1) The IfA must secure that evaluations are carried out of the quality of apprenticeship assessments provided by persons in relation to assessment plans published under section A2.
- (2) “Apprenticeship assessment” means the assessment of a person's attainment of the outcomes set out in the standard to which the [<sup>F7</sup>apprenticeship] assessment plan relates.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1) the IfA may [<sup>F8</sup>carry out evaluations or] approve or make arrangements for other persons to carry out evaluations.
- [<sup>F9</sup>(4) The Secretary of State may by regulations authorise the Institute (subject to any restrictions prescribed by the regulations) to charge fees for things done in connection with the carrying out by it of evaluations under subsection (1).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F7** Word in s. A2B(2) inserted (16.8.2017) by [Technical and Further Education Act 2017 \(c. 19\), s. 47\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 14\(2\); S.I. 2017/844, reg. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#)
- F8** Words in s. A2B(3) inserted (16.8.2017) by [Technical and Further Education Act 2017 \(c. 19\), s. 47\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 14\(3\); S.I. 2017/844, reg. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#)
- F9** S. A2B(4) inserted (16.8.2017) by [Technical and Further Education Act 2017 \(c. 19\), s. 47\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 14\(4\); S.I. 2017/844, reg. 2\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (with reg. 3)

#### A2C Unsatisfactory apprenticeship assessments

- (1) If the IfA considers that the quality of any apprenticeship assessment provided by a person is or may become unsatisfactory, it may carry out a review of the assessment, or make arrangements with another person for the carrying out of such a review.
- (2) The IfA may, in consequence of a review, make arrangements for the purpose of improving the quality of the assessment to which the review relates.
- (3) If the IfA—
  - (a) considers that the quality of any apprenticeship assessment provided by a person is or may become unsatisfactory, or
  - (b) that a person who provides an apprenticeship assessment has failed to co-operate with a review carried out under this section or with arrangements made under subsection (2),it may report the matter to the Secretary of State or such other person as the IfA considers appropriate.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) A report under subsection (3) may contain recommendations as to the action to be taken by the person to whom the report is made.
- (5) The IfA may publish a report under subsection (3).

#### **A2D Committee to advise on quality evaluations etc**

- (1) The IfA may establish a committee with—
  - (a) the function of giving the IfA advice on the performance of its functions under sections A2B and A2C, and
  - (b) such other functions as may be conferred on the committee by the IfA.
- (2) A majority of the members of the committee—
  - (a) must be persons who appear to the IfA to have experience of the assessment of education or training, and
  - (b) must not be members of the IfA.
- (3) Subject to that, Schedule A1 applies to a committee established under this section as it applies to committees established under paragraph 7 of that Schedule.

#### *Review, revision and withdrawal*

#### **A2E Regular reviews of published standards and assessment plans**

- (1) The IfA must maintain arrangements for the review at regular intervals of each standard or assessment plan published under this Chapter, with a view to determining whether the standard or plan ought to be revised or withdrawn.
- (2) In respect of each standard or assessment plan published under this Chapter, the IfA must publish information about the intervals at which those reviews are to be conducted.

#### **A2F Revision or withdrawal of published standards and assessment plans**

- (1) The IfA may—
  - (a) publish a revised version of a standard or assessment plan published under this Chapter, or
  - (b) withdraw a standard or assessment plan published under this Chapter (with or without publishing another in its place).
- (2) Section A2A applies in relation to a revised version of a standard or plan published under this section as it applies in relation to a standard or plan published under section A2.

#### *Other provisions about English approved apprenticeships*

#### **A2G Examinations by independent third parties**

- (1) Before the IfA approves a standard or assessment plan for the purposes of section A2A(1) it must make arrangements for the carrying out of an examination of the standard or plan by an independent third party.



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) The duty imposed by subsection (1) does not apply in relation to a revised version of a standard or assessment plan, but the IfA may, for the purposes of a review under section A2E or at any other time, make arrangements for the carrying out of an examination of a standard or assessment plan by an independent third party.
- (3) Where an examination of a standard or assessment plan is carried out under this section, the IfA must take account of the finding of the examination in exercising its functions in relation to the standard or plan under this Chapter.
- (4) Nothing in subsection (1) prevents the IfA deciding to reject a standard or assessment plan without first making arrangements for the carrying out of an examination by an independent third party.

## **A2H List of published standards and assessment plans**

- (1) The IfA must maintain a list of the standards and assessment plans published by it under this Chapter.
- (2) In respect of each standard and plan listed (including any revised version), the list must include details of when it comes into force.
- (3) Where a revised version is listed, the list must include a general description of the cases to which the revised version applies.
- (4) Where a standard or plan has been withdrawn, the list must include details of when the withdrawal comes into force and a general description of the cases to which it applies.
- (5) The IfA must secure that the list is available free of charge at all reasonable times.

## **A2I Transfer of copyright in standards and assessment plans**

- (1) This section applies where—
  - (a) a standard or assessment plan is approved by the IfA under section A2A, and
  - (b) a person (other than the IfA) is entitled, immediately before the time the approval is given, to any right or interest in any copyright in the standard or plan.
- (2) The right or interest is, by virtue of this section, transferred from that person to the IfA at the time the approval is given.
- (3) The IfA must ensure that a standard or assessment plan in relation to which a right or interest has transferred by virtue of subsection (2) is made available to the public, subject to any conditions that the IfA considers appropriate.]

## **A3 Power to issue apprenticeship certificate**

- (1) The Secretary of State may issue a certificate (“an apprenticeship certificate”) [F10] in respect of] a person who applies for it if it appears to the Secretary of State that the person has completed an approved English apprenticeship.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about—
  - (a) the manner in which applications under subsection (1) must be made;
  - [F11](b) the supply by the Secretary of State of apprenticeship certificates issued under that subsection, and copies of those certificates, to—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) persons in respect of whom they were issued;
  - (ii) persons for whom those persons work or have worked under approved English apprenticeship agreements to which the certificates relate.]
- (3) The Secretary of State may charge a fee for issuing an apprenticeship certificate or supplying a copy only if, and to the extent that, the charging of the fee is authorised by regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

- F10** Words in s. A3(1) substituted (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\), s. 44\(5\), Sch. 4 para. 6\(2\); S.I. 2017/346, reg. 2\(a\)](#)
- F11** S. A3(2)(b) substituted (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\), s. 44\(5\), Sch. 4 para. 6\(3\); S.I. 2017/346, reg. 2\(a\)](#)

#### A4 Delegation

- (1) Any function of the Secretary of State under this Chapter may be carried out by a person designated by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to any power of the Secretary of State to make regulations.
- (3) A person designated under this section must—
- (a) comply with directions given by the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) have regard to guidance given by the Secretary of State.
- (4) A designation under this section may be revoked.

#### A5 English apprenticeship agreements: status

- (1) To the extent that it would otherwise be treated as being a contract of apprenticeship, an approved English apprenticeship agreement is to be treated as not being a contract of apprenticeship.
- (2) To the extent that it would not otherwise be treated as being a contract of service, an approved English apprenticeship agreement is to be treated as being a contract of service.
- (3) This section applies for the purposes of any enactment or rule of law.

#### A6 English apprenticeship agreements: supplementary provision

- (1) If an agreement—
- (a) contains provision which satisfies the conditions mentioned in section A1(3)(a) to (c), but
  - (b) also contains other provision which is inconsistent with those conditions, the other provision is to be treated as having no effect.
- (2) Before an agreement which satisfies the conditions mentioned in section A1(3)(a) to (c) is varied in such a way that it no longer satisfies one or more of those conditions, the person for whom the apprentice is working must give the apprentice a written notice.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (3) The written notice must explain that, if the variation takes effect, the agreement will cease to be an approved English apprenticeship agreement.
- (4) If an agreement is varied in breach of the requirement under subsection (2), the variation has no effect.

## **A7 Crown servants and parliamentary staff**

- (1) Section A1(3) applies in relation to—
  - (a) an agreement under which a person undertakes Crown employment,
  - (b) an agreement under which a person undertakes service as a member of the naval, military or air forces of the Crown, and
  - (c) an agreement under which a person undertakes employment as—
    - (i) a relevant member of the House of Lords staff, or
    - (ii) a relevant member of the House of Commons staff,as it applies in relation to any other agreement under which a person is to work for another (and this Chapter applies accordingly).
- (2) Subsection (1) is subject to subsection (3) and to any modifications which may be prescribed under subsection (5).
- (3) Section A5(2) does not apply in relation to an approved English apprenticeship agreement that is an agreement within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of subsection (1).
- (4) Without prejudice to section 262(3), the power conferred by section A1(3)(c) may be exercised, in particular, to make provision in relation to an agreement within any of paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of subsection (1) that differs from provision made in relation to other agreements under which a person is to work for another.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide for any provision of this Chapter to apply with modifications in relation to—
  - (a) an agreement within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of subsection (1), or
  - (b) a person working, or proposing to work, under such an agreement.
- (6) In subsection (1)—

“Crown employment” means employment under or for the purposes of a government department or an officer or body exercising on behalf of the Crown functions conferred by a statutory provision (but does not include service as a member of the naval, military or air forces of the Crown);

“relevant member of the House of Commons staff” has the meaning given by section 195(5) of the Employment Rights Act 1996;

“relevant member of the House of Lords staff” has the meaning given by section 194(6) of that Act.]

## **[<sup>F12</sup>A8 Progress reports**

- (1) No later than nine months after the end of each reporting period the Secretary of State must publish—
  - (a) information about the progress made in the reporting period towards the apprenticeships target, and
  - (b) any other information about apprenticeships that the Secretary of State considers appropriate,

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and must lay before Parliament a report setting out the information or indicating how it may be accessed.

- (2) “The apprenticeships target” is that three million apprenticeships are entered into in England during the period beginning with 1 May 2015 and ending with 31 March 2020.
- (3) The reporting periods are—
- (a) the period beginning with 1 May 2015 and ending with 31 July 2016;
  - (b) the period beginning with 1 August 2016 and ending with 31 July 2017;
  - (c) the period beginning with 1 August 2017 and ending with 31 July 2018;
  - (d) the period beginning with 1 August 2018 and ending with 31 July 2019;
  - (e) the period beginning with 1 August 2019 and ending with 31 March 2020.
- (4) In this section “apprenticeships” means—
- (a) approved English apprenticeships;
  - (b) apprenticeship agreements within the meaning given in section 32;
  - (c) arrangements to undertake any other kind of working—
    - (i) in relation to which alternative English completion conditions apply under section 1(5), and
    - (ii) in connection with which training is to be provided in accordance with an apprenticeship framework within the meaning given in section 12.

A reference to a section in paragraph (b) or (c) is to the section as it applies in relation to England by virtue of provision made under section 115(9) of the Deregulation Act 2015.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F12** S. A8 inserted (16.5.2016) by [Welfare Reform and Work Act 2016 \(c. 7\)](#), **ss. 2(1), 36(2)(a)**

#### [<sup>F13</sup>A9] Public sector apprenticeship targets

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations set apprenticeship targets for prescribed public bodies.
- (2) An “apprenticeship target”, in relation to a public body, is a target relating to the number of persons (“apprentices”) who work for the body under an apprenticeship agreement.
- (3) Public bodies for which apprenticeship targets are set under this section must have regard to—
  - (a) the targets, and
  - (b) any applicable guidance issued by the Secretary of State in relation to the targets.
- (4) The Secretary of State may require a public body to provide any information that the Secretary of State needs for the purpose of exercising functions under this section.
- (5) Regulations under this section may set apprenticeship targets for—
  - (a) a prescribed public body,
  - (b) a prescribed part of a public body,

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) a prescribed group of public bodies, or
- (d) public bodies of a prescribed description.

A reference in this section to a public body includes a reference to a prescribed part of a public body or a prescribed group of public bodies.

(6) The regulations must specify the period to which each apprenticeship target relates.

(7) In this section—

“apprenticeship agreement” means—

- (a) an approved English apprenticeship agreement;
- (b) an apprenticeship agreement within the meaning given in section 32 as it applies in relation to England by virtue of provision made under section 115(9) of the Deregulation Act 2015;

“public body” means—

- (a) a public authority, or
- (b) a body or other person that is not a public authority but has functions of a public nature and is funded wholly or partly from public funds.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F13** Ss. A9, A10 inserted (4.7.2016) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), **ss. 24(1), 44(2)(c)**

#### [<sup>F13</sup>A10 Further provision about apprenticeship targets

- (1) A public body for which an apprenticeship target is set must—
  - (a) publish and send to the Secretary of State the information specified in subsection (2), and
  - (b) send to the Secretary of State any other prescribed information, within six months after the end of each reporting period of the body in the target period.
- (2) The information referred to in subsection (1)(a) is—
  - (a) the number of employees whose employment in England by the body began in the reporting period in question (“figure A”);
  - (b) the number of apprentices who began to work for the body in that period and whose apprenticeship agreements also began in that period (“figure B”);
  - (c) figure B expressed as a percentage of figure A;
  - (d) the number of employees employed in England that the body has at the end of that period (“figure C”);
  - (e) the number of apprentices who work for the body at the end of that period (“figure D”);
  - (f) figure D expressed as a percentage of figure C;
  - (g) if that reporting period is the first reporting period in the target period, the number of apprentices who worked for the body immediately before that period.
- (3) The information that may be prescribed under subsection (1)(b) includes—
  - (a) information about action that the body has taken to meet an apprenticeship target set for it;

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) if the public body has failed to meet an apprenticeship target set for it, an explanation of why the target has not been met;
  - (c) information about action that the body proposes to take to meet an apprenticeship target set for the body for a period that has not yet expired (“a future target”);
  - (d) if the body considers that a future target is not likely to be met, an explanation of why that is so.
- (4) Regulations may specify how the information is to be published or sent.
- (5) A body's “reporting periods” in the target period are—
- (a) so much of the first financial year of the body to end in the target period as falls within that period,
  - (b) each subsequent financial year of the body which falls wholly within the target period, and
  - (c) if the target period ends during a financial year of the body, so much of that financial year as falls within that period.
- (6) But, where the target period in relation to a body does not exceed 12 months, the Secretary of State may direct in writing that for the purposes of this section the body is to be treated as having one reporting period which coincides with the target period.
- (7) Where, by virtue of section A9(5)(c) or (d) a target is set for more than one public body, regulations may specify which body's financial year is to be used to determine the reporting periods under subsection (5).
- (8) In this section—
- “apprenticeship agreement” has the meaning given by section A9(7);
  - “apprenticeship target” has the meaning given by section A9(2);
  - “public body” has the meaning given by section A9(7);
  - “target period”, in relation to an apprenticeship target, means the period specified under section A9(6) as the period to which the target relates.

#### Textual Amendments

F13 Ss. A9, A10 inserted (4.7.2016) by Enterprise Act 2016 (c. 12), ss. 24(1), 44(2)(c)

#### [<sup>F14</sup>A11 Only statutory apprenticeships to be described as apprenticeships

- (1) A person (“P”) providing or offering any course or training that is, or is to be, undertaken (wholly or partly) in England commits an offence if—
- (a) in the course of business P describes the course or training as an apprenticeship, and
  - (b) the course or training is not a statutory apprenticeship.
- (2) No offence is committed under subsection (1) where the course or training is, or is to be, provided to an individual under or in pursuance of a contract of employment between the individual and P.
- (3) In subsection (1) “statutory apprenticeship” means any course or training that is, or is to be, provided under—
- (a) an approved English apprenticeship;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) an apprenticeship agreement within the meaning given in section 32;
  - (c) an arrangement to undertake any other kind of working—
    - (i) in relation to which alternative English completion conditions apply under section 1(5), and
    - (ii) in connection with which training is to be provided in accordance with an apprenticeship framework within the meaning given in section 12; or
  - (d) arrangements made under—
    - (i) section 2 of the Employment and Training Act 1973,
    - (ii) section 17B(1)(a) of the Jobseekers Act 1995,
    - (iii) section 2(3) of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990, or
    - (iv) section 1 of the Employment and Training Act (Northern Ireland) 1950,
 that are identified by the person making the arrangements as arrangements for the provision of apprenticeships.
- (4) The reference to section 32 in subsection (3)(b) includes a reference to that section as it applies in relation to England by virtue of provision made under section 115(9) of the Deregulation Act 2015; and a reference to a section in subsection (3)(c) is a reference to the section as it so applies.
- (5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine.
- (6) Where an offence under this section committed by a body corporate—
- (a) is committed with the consent or connivance of an officer of the body corporate, or
  - (b) is attributable to neglect on the part of an officer of the body corporate, the officer also commits the offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- (7) Every local weights and measures authority in England—
- (a) has a duty to enforce the provisions of this section within their area;
  - (b) must make to the Secretary of State, whenever he or she so directs, a report on the exercise of the authority's functions under this section.
- A report under paragraph (b) must be in such form, and contain such particulars, as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (8) Proceedings for an offence under this section may be instituted only—
- (a) by or on behalf of a local weights and measures authority in England,
  - (b) by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, or
  - (c) with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions.
- (9) In this section—
- “contract of employment” has the same meaning as in the Employment Rights Act 1996 (see section 230(2) of that Act);
  - “offering”, in relation to any course or training, includes offering or marketing it to the public generally or to any section of the public;
  - “officer”, in relation to a body corporate, means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a director, manager, secretary or similar officer of the body, or a person purporting to act in such capacity;
  - (b) a governor of an educational institution conducted by the body.
- (10) The reference in subsection (1) to describing any course or training as an apprenticeship includes a reference to describing an individual who undertakes it as an apprentice.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F14** S. A11 inserted (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), **ss. 25(1)**, 44(5); S.I. 2017/346, reg. 2(c)

## CHAPTER 1

### [<sup>F15</sup> APPRENTICESHIPS: WALES]

#### Textual Amendments

**F15** Pt. 1 Ch. 1 heading substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), **Sch. 1 para. 6**; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

*F16* ...

#### Textual Amendments

**F16** S. 1 and preceding crossheading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), **Sch. 1 para. 7**; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

#### <sup>F16</sup>1 **Meaning of “completing an English apprenticeship”**

.....

#### 2 **Meaning of “completing a Welsh apprenticeship”**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Chapter.
- (2) A person completes a Welsh apprenticeship in relation to an apprenticeship framework if—
  - (a) the standard Welsh completion conditions are met, or
  - (b) the alternative Welsh completion conditions are met.
- (3) The standard Welsh completion conditions are—
  - (a) that the person has entered into an apprenticeship agreement in connection with the apprenticeship framework,
  - (b) that at the date of that agreement the framework was a recognised Welsh framework,
  - (c) that the person has completed a course of training for the competencies qualification identified in the framework,



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) that, throughout the duration of the course, the person was working under the apprenticeship agreement, and
  - (e) that the person meets the requirements specified in the framework for the purpose of the issue of an apprenticeship certificate.
- (4) In subsection (3)(d)—
- (a) the reference to the apprenticeship agreement mentioned in subsection (3) (a) includes a reference to any apprenticeship agreement which the person subsequently entered into in connection with the same apprenticeship framework;
  - (b) the reference to the course of training for the competencies qualification is to be read, in a case where the person has followed two or more courses of training for the competencies qualification, as a reference to both or all of them.
- (5) The alternative Welsh completion conditions are conditions which—
- (a) apply in cases where a person works otherwise than under an apprenticeship agreement, and
  - (b) are specified in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (6) The kinds of working in relation to which provision may be made under subsection (5) include—
- (a) working as a self-employed person;
  - (b) working otherwise than for reward.

**Commencement Information**

**II** S. 2 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(a\)](#)

F17 ...

**Textual Amendments**

**F17** Ss. 3-6 and preceding crossheading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 8](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), [art. 6\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

**F173 Duty to issue: England**

.....

**F174 Power to issue: England**

.....

**F175 Issue by the English certifying authority: supplementary**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **F17 6 The English certifying authority**

.....

### *Apprenticeship certificates: Wales*

## **7 Duty to issue: Wales**

- (1) The Welsh certifying authority must issue a certificate relating to an apprenticeship framework to a person who applies to the authority in the prescribed manner if—
- (a) it appears to the authority that the person has completed a Welsh apprenticeship in relation to the apprenticeship framework,
  - (b) in a case within section 2(2)(a), it appears to the authority that the condition in subsection (3)(e) of that section was met at the date of the person's application, and
  - (c) the person—
    - (i) provides the authority with such information and evidence as the authority requires the person to provide, and
    - (ii) pays any fee charged by the authority for the issue of the certificate (see section 9).
- (2) The “prescribed manner” is the manner prescribed by regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.

### **Commencement Information**

**I2** S. 7 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#)

## **8 Power to issue: Wales**

- (1) The Welsh certifying authority may issue a certificate relating to an apprenticeship framework to a person who applies to the authority in the prescribed manner if—
- (a) it appears to the authority that at the date of the application the person met the requirements specified in the framework for the purpose of the issue of an apprenticeship certificate,
  - (b) the framework is, or has been, a recognised Welsh framework,
  - (c) the person—
    - (i) provides the authority with such information and evidence as the authority requires the person to provide, and
    - (ii) pays any fee charged by the authority for the issue of the certificate (see section 9).
- (2) The “prescribed manner” for the purposes of subsection (1), is the manner prescribed by regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.

### **Commencement Information**

**I3** S. 8 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(c\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 9 Issue by the Welsh certifying authority: supplementary

- (1) The Welsh certifying authority may charge a fee for issuing an apprenticeship certificate only if, and to the extent that, it is authorised to do so by regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (2) Regulations made by the Welsh Ministers may make provision about the supply of copies of apprenticeship certificates issued under section 7 or 8.
- (3) Regulations under subsection (2) may include provision authorising a person supplying a copy of an apprenticeship certificate to charge a fee for doing so.

### Commencement Information

**I4** S. 9 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(d\)](#)

## 10 The Welsh certifying authority

- (1) In this Chapter, the “Welsh certifying authority”, in relation to an apprenticeship certificate of any description, means—
  - (a) the person (if any) designated under this section to issue apprenticeship certificates of that description;
  - (b) if there is no-one within paragraph (a), the person (if any) designated under this section to issue apprenticeship certificates generally;
  - (c) if there is no-one within paragraph (a) or (b), the Welsh Ministers.
- (2) A person designated under this section to issue apprenticeship certificates must, in exercising functions under this Chapter—
  - (a) comply with directions given by the Welsh Ministers, and
  - (b) have regard to guidance given by the Welsh Ministers.
- (3) “Designated” means designated by an order made by the Welsh Ministers.

### Commencement Information

**I5** S. 10 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(e\)](#)

*Contents of apprenticeship certificate: <sup>F18</sup>...Wales*

### Textual Amendments

**F18** Words in s. 11 cross-heading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 9\(c\)](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), [art. 6\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

## 11 Contents of apprenticeship certificate

- (1) An apprenticeship certificate must state—
  - (a) the name of the person to whom it is issued,
  - (b) the apprenticeship framework to which it relates,
  - (c) the level of that framework, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(d) the apprenticeship sector to which that framework relates.

(2) An apprenticeship certificate must also state such other matters as [<sup>F19</sup>the Welsh Ministers] may by regulations require to be stated in a certificate of that description.

<sup>F20</sup>(3) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F19** Words in s. 11(2) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 9\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

**F20** S. 11(3) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 9\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I6** S. 11 in force at 6.4.2011 for E. by [S.I. 2011/200](#), [art. 3](#)

**I7** S. 11 in force at 10.5.2013 for W. by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(2\)\(a\)](#)

*Apprenticeship frameworks: <sup>F21</sup>... Wales*

#### Textual Amendments

**F21** Words in s. 12 cross-heading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 10\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

## 12 Apprenticeship frameworks: interpretation

(1) In this Chapter, “apprenticeship framework” means a specification of requirements, for the purpose of the issue of apprenticeship certificates, that satisfies subsection (2).

(2) The requirements specified must—

(a) be at a particular level stated in the specification, and

(b) relate to a particular skill, trade or occupation included in an apprenticeship sector stated in the specification.

<sup>F22</sup>(3) .....

(4) In this Chapter, “recognised Welsh framework” means an apprenticeship framework issued under section 19(1) from which recognition has not been withdrawn under section 19(2).

(5) For the purposes of this Chapter—

(a) an apprenticeship framework is at the level of the requirements stated in it;

(b) an apprenticeship framework relates to the apprenticeship sector stated in it.

#### Textual Amendments

**F22** S. 12(3) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 10\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

- I8** S. 12 in force at 1.3.2011 for E. by [S.I. 2011/200, art. 2](#)  
**I9** S. 12 in force at 10.5.2013 for W. by [S.I. 2013/1100, art. 2\(2\)\(b\)](#)

F23  
...

### Textual Amendments

- F23** Ss. 13-17 and preceding crossheading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 11](#); [S.I. 2015/994, art. 6\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

**F23** **13 English issuing authority**

.....

**F23** **14 Issue: England**

.....

**F23** **15 Recognised English frameworks: notification and publication**

.....

**F23** **16 Submission of draft framework for issue: England**

.....

**F23** **17 Transitional provision: England**

.....

*Apprenticeship frameworks: Wales*

**18 Welsh issuing authority**

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may designate a person to issue apprenticeship frameworks relating to a particular apprenticeship sector.
- (2) The power conferred by this section must be exercised so as to secure that, at any time, only one person is designated by the Welsh Ministers to issue apprenticeship frameworks relating to a particular apprenticeship sector.
- (3) A person designated under this section must, in exercising functions under this Chapter—
  - (a) comply with directions given by the Welsh Ministers;
  - (b) have regard to guidance given by the Welsh Ministers.
- (4) A designation under this section may be amended or revoked by the Welsh Ministers.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) In this Chapter the “Welsh issuing authority”, in relation to an apprenticeship framework, means the person designated under this section to issue frameworks of that description.

**Commencement Information**

**I10** S. 18 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(f\)](#)

**19 Issue: Wales**

- (1) The Welsh issuing authority may issue an apprenticeship framework only if the authority is satisfied that the framework meets the requirements specified, by the specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales, for recognised Welsh frameworks of that description.
- (2) Recognition of a recognised Welsh framework may be withdrawn—
- (a) by the Welsh issuing authority, or
  - (b) if there is no Welsh issuing authority in relation to the framework, by the Welsh Ministers.

**Commencement Information**

**I11** S. 19 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(g\)](#)

**20 Recognised Welsh frameworks: notification and publication**

- (1) On issuing an apprenticeship framework under section 19(1), the Welsh issuing authority must—
- (a) publish the framework;
  - (b) notify the Welsh Ministers of the issue of the framework.
- (2) A notice given under subsection (1)(b) must be accompanied by a copy of the framework.
- (3) A person who withdraws recognition of an apprenticeship framework under section 19(2) must—
- (a) publish a notice stating that recognition of the framework has been withdrawn;
  - (b) in the case of withdrawal otherwise than by the Welsh Ministers, notify the Welsh Ministers of the withdrawal.
- (4) Where this section imposes a duty on a person to publish a framework or notice, the publication may be in such manner as the person thinks fit.

**Commencement Information**

**I12** S. 20 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(h\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 21 Submission of draft framework for issue: Wales

- (1) This section applies if a person—
  - (a) submits a draft of an apprenticeship framework to the Welsh issuing authority, and
  - (b) requests that the authority issue a framework in the form of the draft.
- (2) The authority may require the person to provide such information and evidence in connection with the draft as the authority thinks appropriate.
- (3) If the authority decides not to issue a framework in the form of the draft, it must give the person reasons for its decision.

### Commencement Information

**I13** S. 21 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(i\)](#)

## 22 Transitional provision: Wales

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may by order provide for an existing vocational specification to be treated, for all purposes or for purposes specified in the order, as if it were an apprenticeship framework issued under section 19(1) that specified requirements for the purpose of the issue of apprenticeship certificates.
- (2) For the purposes of its application in relation to an existing vocational specification that, by virtue of an order under subsection (1), is treated as an apprenticeship framework issued under section 19(1), this Chapter has effect subject to any modifications specified in the order.
- (3) An order under subsection (1) must—
  - (a) specify a date on which the deemed framework is to be treated as being issued under section 19(1);
  - (b) specify a date on which recognition of the deemed framework is to be treated as having been withdrawn under section 19(2);
  - (c) specify a qualification that the deemed framework is to be treated as identifying as the competencies qualification;
  - (d) specify the level and apprenticeship sector that are to be treated as being stated in the deemed framework.
- (4) The date specified under subsection (3)(b) in an order under subsection (1) must be no later than the day after the day that is the school leaving date for 2013.
- (5) In this section—

“the deemed framework”, in relation to an order under subsection (1), means an existing vocational specification that, by virtue of the order, is treated as being an apprenticeship framework issued under section 19(1);

“existing vocational specification” means a specification, prepared before the coming into force of section 19, of training, qualifications and skills appropriate for persons engaging in a particular trade, skill or occupation.
- (6) Nothing in this section limits the powers conferred by section 262.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I14** S. 22 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(j\)](#)

F24 ...

### Textual Amendments

**F24** Ss. 23-27 and preceding crossheading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 12](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), [art. 6\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

### <sup>F24</sup>**23** Duty to prepare and submit draft specification: England

.....

### <sup>F24</sup>**24** Order bringing specification into effect

.....

### <sup>F24</sup>**25** Modification: England

.....

### <sup>F24</sup>**26** Replacement or modification: recognised English frameworks

.....

### <sup>F24</sup>**27** Contents of specification of apprenticeship standards for England

.....

*Specification of apprenticeship standards: Wales*

### **28** Specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may prepare a draft specification of apprenticeship standards.
- (2) In preparing the draft, the Welsh Ministers must consult such persons as they think appropriate.
- (3) Having prepared a draft, the Welsh Ministers may by order provide that a specification of apprenticeship standards (“the specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales”) is to have effect—
  - (a) in the form of the draft, or
  - (b) in that form with such modifications as the Welsh Ministers think appropriate.
- (4) Subsection (2) does not apply in relation to the first draft specification to be prepared by the Welsh Ministers after the commencement of this section.



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) The Welsh Ministers may not make an order under subsection (3) unless satisfied that the specification of apprenticeship standards given effect to by the order complies with section 31.
- (6) The power conferred by subsection (3) is to be exercised so as to secure that at any time only one specification of apprenticeship standards has effect as the specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales.

#### Commencement Information

**I15** S. 28 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(k\)](#)

### 29 Modification: Wales

- (1) The Welsh Ministers may by order provide that the specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales is to have effect subject to modifications specified in the order.
- (2) The Welsh Ministers may not make an order under this section unless satisfied that the specification, as so modified, complies with section 31.

#### Commencement Information

**I16** S. 29 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(l\)](#)

### 30 Replacement or modification: recognised Welsh frameworks

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a recognised Welsh framework does not cease to be a recognised Welsh framework if, by virtue of an order under section 28 or 29, it ceases to meet the requirements specified for frameworks of its description by the specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales.
- (2) An order under section 28 may provide for an apprenticeship framework which—
  - (a) immediately before the making of the order is a recognised Welsh framework, but
  - (b) does not meet the requirements specified for frameworks of its description by the specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales to which the order gives effect,
 to cease to have effect as a recognised Welsh framework.

#### Commencement Information

**I17** S. 30 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(m\)](#)

### 31 Contents of specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales

- (1) The specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales—
  - (a) must specify requirements to be met by recognised Welsh frameworks,
  - (b) may specify different requirements in relation to recognised Welsh frameworks at different levels.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The requirements specified by the specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales must include—
- (a) requirements as to Welsh certificate requirements, including requirements as to standards of attainment to be required by them,
  - (b) requirements for a recognised Welsh framework to include, as a Welsh certificate requirement, the requirement that an apprenticeship certificate relating to the framework may be issued to a person only if the person has received both on-the-job training and off-the-job training, and
  - (c) requirements for a recognised Welsh framework to—
    - (i) include, as a Welsh certificate requirement, the requirement that one or more qualifications be held,
    - (ii) include, as a Welsh certificate requirement, the requirement that the qualification, or the qualifications taken together, demonstrate the relevant occupational competencies and the relevant technical knowledge, and
    - (iii) identify the qualification that demonstrates the relevant occupational competencies as the competencies qualification in relation to the framework.
- (3) Requirements as to standards of attainment may be specified by reference, in particular, to descriptions of qualifications or training.
- (4) In this section—
- “off-the-job training” in relation to a recognised Welsh framework, is training which—
- (a) is received for the purposes of the skill, trade or occupation to which the framework relates, and
  - (b) is not on-the-job training;
- “on-the-job training” in relation to a recognised Welsh framework, is training received in the course of carrying on the skill, trade or occupation to which the framework relates;
- “the relevant occupational competencies”, in relation to a recognised Welsh framework, means the competencies required to perform the skill, trade or occupation to which the framework relates at the level required in the framework;
- “the relevant technical knowledge”, in relation to a recognised Welsh framework, means the technical knowledge required to perform the skill, trade or occupation to which the framework relates at the level required in the framework;
- “Welsh certificate requirement” means a requirement specified in a recognised Welsh framework for the purpose of the issue of apprenticeship certificates relating to that framework by the Welsh certifying authority.

#### Commencement Information

**I18** S. 31 in force at 10.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), [art. 2\(1\)\(n\)](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Apprenticeship agreements: <sup>F25</sup>... Wales

**Textual Amendments**

**F25** Words in s. 32 cross-heading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\), s. 115\(7\), Sch. 1 para. 13](#); [S.I. 2015/994, art. 6\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

**32 Meaning of “apprenticeship agreement”**

- (1) In this Chapter, “apprenticeship agreement” means an agreement in relation to which each of the conditions in subsection (2) is satisfied.
- (2) The conditions are—
  - (a) that a person (the “apprentice”) undertakes to work for another (the “employer”) under the agreement;
  - (b) that the agreement is in the prescribed form;
  - (c) that the agreement states that it is governed by the law of England and Wales;
  - (d) that the agreement states that it is entered into in connection with a qualifying apprenticeship framework.
- (3) The power conferred by subsection (2)(b) may be exercised, in particular—
  - (a) to specify provisions that must be included in an apprenticeship agreement;
  - (b) to specify provisions that must not be included in an apprenticeship agreement;
  - (c) to specify all or part of the wording of provisions that must be included in an apprenticeship agreement.
- (4) Where an agreement states that it is entered into in connection with an apprenticeship framework (“the relevant framework”) that is not a qualifying apprenticeship framework, subsection (2)(d) is to be taken to be satisfied in relation to the agreement if—
  - (a) at a time within the period of three years ending with the date of the agreement, the relevant framework was a qualifying apprenticeship framework;
  - (b) at the date of the agreement, the apprentice has not completed the whole of a course of training for the competencies qualification identified in the relevant framework,
  - (c) before the date of the agreement, the apprentice entered into an apprenticeship agreement (“the earlier agreement”) which stated that it was entered into in connection with the relevant framework, and
  - (d) at the date of the earlier agreement, the relevant framework was a qualifying apprenticeship framework.
- (5) In subsection (4)(b), the reference to a course of training for the competencies qualification is to be read, in a case where the person follows two or more courses of training for the competencies qualification, as a reference to both or all of them.
- (6) An apprenticeship framework is a “qualifying apprenticeship framework”, for the purposes of this section, if it is—
  - <sup>F26</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) a recognised Welsh framework.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F26** S. 32(6)(a) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 14](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

### Commencement Information

**I19** S. 32 in force at 6.4.2011 for E. by [S.I. 2011/200](#), art. 3

**I20** S. 32 in force at 1.8.2011 for W. by [S.I. 2011/200](#), art. 4

## 33 Ineffective provisions

- (1) To the extent that provision included in an apprenticeship agreement conflicts with the prescribed apprenticeship provisions, it has no effect.
- (2) In this section, the “prescribed apprenticeship provisions”, in relation to an apprenticeship agreement, means those provisions—
  - (a) that are included in the agreement, and
  - (b) without the inclusion of which the agreement would not satisfy section 32(2)(b).

### Commencement Information

**I21** S. 33 in force at 6.4.2011 for E. by [S.I. 2011/200](#), art. 3

**I22** S. 33 in force at 1.8.2011 for W. by [S.I. 2011/200](#), art. 4

## 34 Variation

- (1) If a variation to an apprenticeship agreement is within subsection (2), it has effect only if, before it was made, the employer complied with the requirement in subsection (3).
- (2) A variation to an apprenticeship agreement is within this subsection if its nature is such that, were it to take effect, the agreement would cease to be an apprenticeship agreement.
- (3) The employer must give the apprentice written notice stating that, if the variation takes effect, the agreement will cease to be an apprenticeship agreement.

### Commencement Information

**I23** S. 34 in force at 6.4.2011 for E. by [S.I. 2011/200](#), art. 3

**I24** S. 34 in force at 1.8.2011 for W. by [S.I. 2011/200](#), art. 4

## 35 Status

- (1) To the extent that it would otherwise be treated as being a contract of apprenticeship, an apprenticeship agreement is to be treated as not being a contract of apprenticeship.
- (2) To the extent that it would not otherwise be treated as being a contract of service, an apprenticeship agreement is to be treated as being a contract of service.
- (3) This section applies for the purposes of any enactment or rule of law.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

- I25** S. 35 in force at 6.4.2011 for E. by [S.I. 2011/200, art. 3](#)  
**I26** S. 35 in force at 1.8.2011 for W. by [S.I. 2011/200, art. 4](#)

### 36 Crown servants and Parliamentary staff

- (1) Sections 32 to 35 apply in relation to—
- (a) an agreement under which a person undertakes Crown employment,
  - (b) an agreement under which a person undertakes service as a member of the naval, military or air forces of the Crown, and
  - (c) an agreement under which a person undertakes employment as—
    - (i) a relevant member of the House of Lords staff, or
    - (ii) a relevant member of the House of Commons staff,
- as they apply in relation to any other agreement under which a person undertakes to work for another.
- (2) Subsection (1) is subject to subsection (3) and to any modifications which may be prescribed under subsection (5).
- (3) Section 35(2) does not apply in relation to an apprenticeship agreement that is an agreement within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of subsection (1).
- (4) Without prejudice to section 262(3), the power conferred by section 32(2)(b) may be exercised, in particular, to make provision in relation to an apprenticeship agreement which is an agreement within any of paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of subsection (1) that differs from provision made in relation to other apprenticeship agreements.
- (5) Regulations may provide for any provision of this Chapter <sup>F27</sup>... to apply with modifications in relation to—
- (a) an agreement within paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of subsection (1), or
  - (b) a person working, or proposing to work, under such an agreement.
- (6) In subsection (1)—
- “Crown employment” means employment under or for the purposes of a government department or any officer or body exercising on behalf of the Crown functions conferred by a statutory provision (but does not include service as a member of the naval, military or air forces of the Crown);
- “relevant member of the House of Commons staff” has the meaning given by section 195(5) of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18);
- “relevant member of the House of Lords staff” has the meaning given by section 194(6) of that Act.

#### Textual Amendments

- F27** Words in s. 36(5) omitted (1.9.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\), s. 82\(3\), Sch. 18 para. 3; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I27** S. 36 in force at 6.4.2011 for E. by [S.I. 2011/200, art. 3](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**I28** S. 36 in force at 1.8.2011 for W. by [S.I. 2011/200, art. 4](#)

### *Duty to participate in education or training: England*

## **37 Duty to participate in education or training: apprenticeship agreements**

- (1) Part 1 of the Education and Skills Act 2008 (c. 25) (duty to participate in education or training: England) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 2 (duty to participate), in subsection (1)(b) after “contract of apprenticeship” insert “ or an apprenticeship agreement ”.
- (3) In section 66 (interpretation of Part 1), in subsection (1)—
  - (a) at the appropriate place insert—
 

“ apprenticeship agreement” has the meaning given in section 32 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009;”;
  - (b) in the definition of “contract of employment” after “contract of apprenticeship” insert “ or an apprenticeship agreement ”.

### **Commencement Information**

**I29** S. 37 in force at 6.4.2011 by [S.I. 2011/200, art. 3](#)

### *General*

## **38 Apprenticeship sectors**

- (1) [<sup>F28</sup>The Welsh Ministers] must by order specify sectors of skill, trade or occupation for the purposes of this Chapter.
- (2) The sectors specified under subsection (1) must in the opinion of [<sup>F29</sup>the Welsh Ministers] encompass the full range of skills, trades and occupations.

### **Textual Amendments**

**F28** Words in s. 38(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\), s. 115\(7\), Sch. 1 para. 15\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2015/994, art. 6\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

**F29** Words in s. 38(2) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\), s. 115\(7\), Sch. 1 para. 15\(b\)](#); [S.I. 2015/994, art. 6\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

### **Commencement Information**

**I30** S. 38 in force at 1.3.2011 by [S.I. 2011/200, art. 2](#)

## **39 Interpretation of Chapter**

- (1) In this Chapter—
  - “apprenticeship agreement” has the meaning given by section 32(1);
  - “apprenticeship certificate” means a certificate issued under section <sup>F30</sup>... 7 or 8;

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“apprenticeship framework” has the meaning given by section 12(1);

“apprenticeship sector” means a sector specified under section 38;

“the competencies qualification”, in relation to an apprenticeship framework, means the qualification identified in the framework as being the competencies qualification;

F31

...

F31

...

F31

...

“recognised Welsh framework” has the meaning given by section 12(4);

F31

...

“the specification of apprenticeship standards for Wales” means the specification of apprenticeship standards having effect for the time being by virtue of an order made by the Welsh Ministers under section 28 or 29;

“Welsh certifying authority”, in relation to an apprenticeship certificate of any description, has the meaning given by section 10(1);

“Welsh issuing authority”, in relation to an apprenticeship framework, has the meaning given by section 18(5).

(2) References in this Chapter—

(a) to the level of an apprenticeship framework, or

(b) to the apprenticeship sector to which an apprenticeship framework relates, are to be construed in accordance with section 12(5).

(3) References in this Chapter to an employer and an apprentice, in relation to an apprenticeship agreement, are to be construed in accordance with section 32.

#### Textual Amendments

**F30** Words in s. 39(1) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 16\(a\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

**F31** Words in s. 39(1) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 16\(b\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

#### Commencement Information

**I31** S. 39 in force at 6.4.2011 for E. by [S.I. 2011/200](#), art. 3

**I32** S. 39 in force at 10.5.2013 for W. by [S.I. 2013/1100](#), art. 2(2)(c)

## CHAPTER 2

### STUDY AND TRAINING

#### 40 Employer support for employee study and training

(1) The Employment Rights Act 1996 (c. 18) is amended as follows.

(2) After Part 6 (time off work) insert—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## “PART 6A

### STUDY AND TRAINING

#### 63D Statutory right to make request in relation to study or training

- (1) A qualifying employee may make an application under this section to his or her employer.
- (2) An application under this section (a “section 63D application”) is an application that meets—
  - (a) the conditions in subsections (3) to (5), and
  - (b) any further conditions specified by the Secretary of State in regulations.
- (3) The application must be made for the purpose of enabling the employee to undertake study or training (or both) within subsection (4).
- (4) Study or training is within this subsection if its purpose is to improve—
  - (a) the employee's effectiveness in the employer's business, and
  - (b) the performance of the employer's business.
- (5) The application must state that it is an application under this section.
- (6) An employee is a qualifying employee for the purposes of this section if the employee—
  - (a) satisfies any conditions about duration of employment specified by the Secretary of State in regulations, and
  - (b) is not a person within subsection (7).
- (7) The following persons are within this subsection—
  - (a) a person of compulsory school age (or, in Scotland, school age);
  - (b) a person to whom Part 1 of the Education and Skills Act 2008 (duty to participate in education or training for 16 and 17 year olds) applies;
  - (c) a person who, by virtue of section 29 of that Act, is treated as a person to whom that Part applies for the purposes specified in that section (extension for person reaching 18);
  - (d) a person to whom section 63A of this Act (right to time off for young person for study or training) applies;
  - (e) an agency worker;
  - (f) a person of a description specified by the Secretary of State in regulations.
- (8) Nothing in this Part prevents an employee and an employer from making any other arrangements in relation to study or training.
- (9) In this section—
 

“agency worker” means a worker supplied by a person (the “agent”) to do work for another person (the “principal”) under a contract or other arrangement between the agent and principal;



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“compulsory school age” has the meaning given in section 8 of the Education Act 1996;

“school age” has the meaning given in section 31 of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980.

### 63E Section 63D application: supplementary

- (1) A section 63D application may—
  - (a) be made in relation to study or training of any description (subject to section 63D(3) and (4) and regulations under section 63D(2));
  - (b) relate to more than one description of study or training.
- (2) The study or training may (in particular) be study or training that (if undertaken)—
  - (a) would be undertaken on the employer's premises or elsewhere (including at the employee's home);
  - (b) would be undertaken by the employee while performing the duties of the employee's employment or separately;
  - (c) would be provided or supervised by the employer or by someone else;
  - (d) would be undertaken without supervision;
  - (e) would be undertaken within or outside the United Kingdom.
- (3) The study or training need not be intended to lead to the award of a qualification to the employee.
- (4) A section 63D application must—
  - (a) give the following details of the proposed study or training—
    - (i) its subject matter;
    - (ii) where and when it would take place;
    - (iii) who would provide or supervise it;
    - (iv) what qualification (if any) it would lead to;
  - (b) explain how the employee thinks the proposed study or training would improve—
    - (i) the employee's effectiveness in the employer's business, and
    - (ii) the performance of the employer's business;
  - (c) contain information of any other description specified by the Secretary of State in regulations.
- (5) The Secretary of State may make regulations about—
  - (a) the form of a section 63D application;
  - (b) when a section 63D application is to be taken to be received for the purposes of this Part.

### 63F Employer's duties in relation to application

- (1) Subsections (4) to (7) apply if—
  - (a) an employer receives a section 63D application (the “current application”) from an employee, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) during the relevant 12 month period the employer has not received another section 63D application (an “earlier application”) from the employee.
- (2) The “relevant 12 month period” is the 12 month period ending with the day on which the employer receives the current application.
  - (3) The Secretary of State may make regulations about circumstances in which, at an employee's request, an employer is to be required to ignore an earlier application for the purposes of subsection (1).
  - (4) The employer must deal with the application in accordance with regulations made by the Secretary of State.
  - (5) The employer may refuse a section 63D application only if the employer thinks that one or more of the permissible grounds for refusal applies in relation to the application.
  - (6) The employer may refuse part of a section 63D application only if the employer thinks that one or more of the permissible grounds for refusal applies in relation to that part.
  - (7) The permissible grounds for refusal are—
    - (a) that the proposed study or training to which the application, or the part in question, relates would not improve—
      - (i) the employee's effectiveness in the employer's business, or
      - (ii) the performance of the employer's business;
    - (b) the burden of additional costs;
    - (c) detrimental effect on ability to meet customer demand;
    - (d) inability to re-organise work among existing staff;
    - (e) inability to recruit additional staff;
    - (f) detrimental impact on quality;
    - (g) detrimental impact on performance;
    - (h) insufficiency of work during the periods the employee proposes to work;
    - (i) planned structural changes;
    - (j) any other grounds specified by the Secretary of State in regulations.

### **63G Regulations about dealing with applications**

- (1) Regulations under section 63F(4) may, in particular, include provision—
  - (a) for the employee to have a right to be accompanied by a person of a specified description when attending meetings held in relation to a section 63D application in accordance with any such regulations;
  - (b) for the postponement of such a meeting if the employee's companion under paragraph (a) is not available to attend it;
  - (c) in relation to companions under paragraph (a), corresponding to section 10(6) and (7) of the Employment Relations Act 1999 (right to paid time off to act as companion, etc.);
  - (d) in relation to the rights under paragraphs (a) to (c), for rights to complain to an employment tribunal and not to be subjected to a detriment, and about unfair dismissal;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (e) for section 63D applications to be treated as withdrawn in specified circumstances.

(2) In this section “specified” means specified in the regulations.

### 63H Employee's duties in relation to agreed study or training

- (1) This section applies if an employer has agreed to a section 63D application, or part of a section 63D application, made by an employee in relation to particular study or training (the “agreed study or training”).
- (2) The employee must inform the employer if the employee—
  - (a) fails to start the agreed study or training;
  - (b) fails to complete the agreed study or training;
  - (c) undertakes, or proposes to undertake, study or training that differs from the agreed study or training in any respect (including those specified in section 63E(4)(a)).
- (3) The Secretary of State may make regulations about the way in which the employee is to comply with the duty under subsection (2).

### 63I Complaints to employment tribunals

- (1) An employee who makes a section 63D application may present a complaint to an employment tribunal that—
  - (a) the employer has failed to comply with section 63F(4), (5) or (6), or
  - (b) the employer's decision to refuse the application, or part of it, is based on incorrect facts.

This is subject to the following provisions of this section.

- (2) No complaint under this section may be made in respect of a section 63D application which has been disposed of by agreement or withdrawn.
- (3) In the case of a section 63D application that has not been disposed of by agreement or withdrawn, a complaint under this section may only be made if the employer—
  - (a) notifies the employee of a decision to refuse the application (or part of it) on appeal, or
  - (b) commits a breach of regulations under section 63F(4), where the breach is of a description specified by the Secretary of State in regulations.
- (4) No complaint under this section may be made in respect of failure to comply with provision included in regulations under section 63F(4) because of—
  - (a) section 63G(1)(a) or (b), if provision is included in regulations under section 63F(4) by virtue of section 63G(1)(d), or
  - (b) section 63G(1)(c).
- (5) An employment tribunal may not consider a complaint under this section unless the complaint is presented—
  - (a) before the end of the period of three months beginning with the relevant date, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) within any further period that the tribunal considers reasonable, if the tribunal is satisfied that it was not reasonably practicable for the complaint to be presented before the end of that period of three months.

(6) The relevant date is—

- (a) in the case of a complaint permitted by subsection (3)(a), the date on which the employee is notified of the decision on the appeal;
- (b) in the case of a complaint permitted by subsection (3)(b), the date on which the breach was committed.

### 63J Remedies

- (1) If an employment tribunal finds a complaint under section 63I well-founded it must make a declaration to that effect and may—
  - (a) make an order for reconsideration of the section 63D application;
  - (b) make an award of compensation to be paid by the employer to the employee.
- (2) The amount of any compensation must be the amount the tribunal considers just and equitable in all the circumstances, but must not exceed the permitted maximum.
- (3) The permitted maximum is the number of weeks' pay specified by the Secretary of State in regulations.
- (4) If an employment tribunal makes an order under subsection (1)(a), section 63F and regulations under that section apply as if the application had been received on the date of the order (instead of on the date it was actually received).

### 63K Supplementary

Regulations under this Part may make different provision for different cases.”

- (3) After section 47E (protection from suffering detriment in employment: flexible working) insert—

#### “Study and training

- (1) An employee has the right not to be subjected to any detriment by any act, or any deliberate failure to act, by the employee's employer done on the ground that the employee—
  - (a) made (or proposed to make) a section 63D application,
  - (b) exercised (or proposed to exercise) a right conferred on the employee under section 63F,
  - (c) brought proceedings against the employer under section 63I, or
  - (d) alleged the existence of any circumstance which would constitute a ground for bringing such proceedings.
- (2) This section does not apply if the detriment in question amounts to dismissal within the meaning of Part 10.”

- (4) After section 104D (unfair dismissal: pension enrolment) insert—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### “Study and training

An employee who is dismissed is to be regarded for the purposes of this Part as unfairly dismissed if the reason (or, if more than one, the principal reason) for the dismissal is that the employee—

- (a) made (or proposed to make) a section 63D application,
- (b) exercised (or proposed to exercise) a right conferred on the employee under section 63F,
- (c) brought proceedings against the employer under section 63I, or
- (d) alleged the existence of any circumstance which would constitute a ground for bringing such proceedings.”

- (5) Schedule 1 makes amendments to employment legislation relating to the provision made by this section.]

#### Commencement Information

**I33** S. 40 in force at 6.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 4, [Sch. 3](#) (with arts. 9-11)

## [<sup>F32</sup>PART 1A

### APPRENTICESHIPS: INFORMATION SHARING

#### Textual Amendments

**F32** Pt. 1A inserted (4.7.2016) by [Enterprise Act 2016](#) (c. 12), [ss. 26\(1\)](#), 44(5); [S.I. 2016/695](#), art. 2(a)

### *England*

#### 40A Sharing of information by HMRC and the Secretary of State

- (1) HMRC may disclose information held by them to the Secretary of State for the purpose of the Secretary of State's functions in relation to English statutory apprenticeships.
- (2) The Secretary of State may disclose information to HMRC—
  - (a) for the purpose of requesting HMRC to disclose information under subsection (1), or
  - (b) for another purpose connected with the Secretary of State's functions in relation to English statutory apprenticeships.
- (3) In this section “English statutory apprenticeships” means—
  - (a) approved English apprenticeships within the meaning given in section A1;
  - (b) apprenticeships undertaken under apprenticeship agreements within the meaning given in section 32 that were entered into in connection with recognised English frameworks;
  - (c) apprenticeships in relation to which alternative English completion arrangements apply under section 1(5);

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (d) apprenticeships undertaken under arrangements made in relation to England under section 2 of the Employment and Training Act 1973 that are identified by the person making them as arrangements for the provision of apprenticeships.

*Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland*

**40B Sharing of information by HMRC and devolved authorities**

- (1) HMRC may disclose information held by them—
- (a) to a Welsh authority for the purpose of the authority's functions in relation to Welsh apprenticeships;
  - (b) to a Scottish authority for the purpose of the authority's functions in relation to Scottish apprenticeships;
  - (c) to a Northern Irish authority for the purpose of the authority's functions in relation to Northern Irish apprenticeships.
- (2) An authority mentioned in paragraph (a), (b) or (c) of subsection (1) may disclose information to HMRC—
- (a) for the purpose of requesting HMRC to disclose information to the authority under subsection (1), or
  - (b) for another purpose connected with the authority's functions mentioned in subsection (1).
- (3) In this section—
- “Northern Irish apprenticeships” means apprenticeships undertaken under arrangements made under section 1 of the Employment and Training Act (Northern Ireland) 1950 that are identified by the person making them as arrangements for the provision of apprenticeships;
- “Northern Irish authority” means—
- (a) a Northern Ireland department, and
  - (b) any body or other person that is prescribed, or of a prescribed description;
- “Scottish apprenticeships” means apprenticeships undertaken under arrangements made—
- (a) in relation to Scotland, under section 2 of the Employment and Training Act 1973, or
  - (b) under section 2(3) of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990,
- that are identified by the person making them as arrangements for the provision of apprenticeships;
- “Scottish authority” means—
- (a) the Scottish Ministers, and
  - (b) any body or other person that is prescribed, or of a prescribed description;
- “Welsh apprenticeships” means—
- (a) apprenticeships undertaken under apprenticeship agreements within the meaning given in section 32 that were entered into in connection with recognised Welsh frameworks;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) apprenticeships in relation to which alternative Welsh completion arrangements apply under section 2(5);
  - (c) apprenticeships undertaken under arrangements made in relation to Wales under—
    - (i) section 2 of the Employment and Training Act 1973, or
    - (ii) section 17B of the Jobseekers Act 1995,
 that are identified by the person making them as arrangements for the provision of apprenticeships;
- “Welsh authority” means—
- (a) the Welsh Ministers, and
  - (b) any body or other person that is prescribed, or of a prescribed description.
- (4) In subsection (3)—
- (a) the reference to a Northern Ireland department includes a reference to a person providing services to a Northern Ireland department;
  - (b) the reference to the Scottish Ministers includes a reference to a person providing services to the Scottish Ministers;
  - (c) the reference to the Welsh Ministers includes a reference to a person providing services to the Welsh Ministers.
- (5) Regulations under this section may amend the definition in subsection (3) of—
- (a) “Northern Irish apprenticeships”,
  - (b) “Scottish apprenticeships”, or
  - (c) “Welsh apprenticeships”.

### *General*

#### **40C Wrongful disclosure**

- (1) Information disclosed by HMRC under section 40A(1) or 40B(1) may not be disclosed by the recipient of the information to any other person without the consent of HMRC (except so far as permitted by section 40A(2) or 40B(2)).
- (2) If a person discloses, in contravention of subsection (1), any revenue and customs information relating to a person whose identity—
  - (a) is specified in the disclosure, or
  - (b) can be deduced from it,
 section 19 of the Commissioners for Revenue and Customs Act 2005 (wrongful disclosure) applies in relation to that disclosure as it applies in relation to a disclosure of such information in contravention of section 20(9) of that Act.

#### **40D Interpretation**

- (1) In this Part—
  - “HMRC” means the Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs;

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“revenue and customs information relating to a person” has the same meaning as in section 19 of the Commissioners for Revenue and Customs Act 2005 (see section 19(2) of that Act).

- (2) In this Part—
- (a) references to HMRC include references to a person providing services to HMRC;
  - (b) references to the Secretary of State include references to a person providing services to the Secretary of State.
- (3) Nothing in this Part affects any power to disclose information that exists apart from this Part.]

## PART 2

### [<sup>F33</sup>LOCAL AUTHORITY] FUNCTIONS

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**

#### *Education and training for persons over compulsory school age*

### 41 Education and training for persons over compulsory school age: general duty

Before section 15A of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) insert—

#### “15ZA Duty in respect of education and training for persons over compulsory school age: England

- (1) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England must secure that enough suitable education and training is provided to meet the reasonable needs of—
  - (a) persons in their area who are over compulsory school age but under 19, and
  - (b) persons in their area who are aged 19 or over but under 25 and are subject to learning difficulty assessment.
- (2) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] may comply with subsection (1) by securing the provision of education or training outside as well as within their area.
- (3) In deciding for the purposes of subsection (1) whether education or training is suitable to meet persons' reasonable needs, a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must (in particular) have regard to—
  - (a) the persons' ages, abilities and aptitudes;
  - (b) any learning difficulties the persons may have;
  - (c) the quality of the education or training;
  - (d) the locations and times at which the education or training is provided.
- (4) In performing the duty imposed by subsection (1) a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) act with a view to encouraging diversity in the education and training available to persons;
  - (b) act with a view to increasing opportunities for persons to exercise choice;
  - (c) act with a view to enabling persons to whom Part 1 of the Education and Skills Act 2008 applies to fulfil the duty imposed by section 2 of that Act;
  - (d) take account of education and training whose provision the authority think might reasonably be secured by other persons.
- (5) A [F33]local authority] must, in—
- (a) making any determination as to the provision of apprenticeship training that should be secured under subsection (1), or
  - (b) securing the provision of any apprenticeship training under that subsection,
- co-operate with the Chief Executive of Skills Funding.
- (6) For the purposes of this section a person has a learning difficulty if—
- (a) the person has a significantly greater difficulty in learning than the majority of persons of the same age, or
  - (b) the person has a disability which either prevents or hinders the person from making use of facilities of a kind generally provided by institutions providing education or training for persons who are over compulsory school age.
- (7) But a person is not to be taken to have a learning difficulty solely because the language (or form of language) in which the person is or will be taught is different from a language (or form of language) which has at any time been spoken in the person's home.
- (8) In this section—
- “apprenticeship training” means training provided in connection with—
- (a) an apprenticeship agreement (within the meaning given in section 32 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009),
  - (b) any other contract of employment, or
  - (c) any other kind of working in relation to which alternative English completion conditions apply under section 1(5) of that Act (meaning of “completing an English apprenticeship”);
- “education” includes full-time and part-time education;
- “training” includes—
- (a) full-time and part-time training;
  - (b) vocational, social, physical and recreational training;
  - (c) apprenticeship training.
- (9) The references in subsection (1) to—
- (a) persons in a local authority's area who are over compulsory school age but under 19, and
  - (b) persons in a local authority's area who are aged 19 or over but under 25 and are subject to learning difficulty assessment,

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

do not include persons who are subject to a detention order.

### 15ZB Co-operation in performance of section 15ZA duty

[<sup>F34</sup>Local authorities] in England must co-operate with each other in performing their duties under section 15ZA(1).”

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 16(3)**

#### Commencement Information

**I34** S. 41 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

## 42 Encouragement of education and training for persons over compulsory school age

After section 15ZB of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (inserted by section 41) insert—

### “15ZC Encouragement of education and training for persons over compulsory school age: England

- (1) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England must—
- (a) encourage participation in education and training by persons in their area who are within section 15ZA(1)(a) or (b);
  - (b) encourage employers to participate in the provision of education and training for such persons.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b), participating in the provision of training includes participating by entering into—
- (a) an apprenticeship agreement (within the meaning given in section 32 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009), or
  - (b) any other contract of employment in connection with which training is provided.
- (3) In this section “education” and “training” have the same meanings as in section 15ZA.”

#### Commencement Information

**I35** S. 42 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

## 43 [<sup>F33</sup>Local authority] directions: children over compulsory school age

- (1) Chapter 1 of Part 3 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 84(6) (admissions code: interpretation) for the definition of “child” substitute—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

““child” includes a person who has not attained the age of 19, except in sections 96 and 97 in so far as those sections apply in relation to Wales;”.

(3) After section 96(3) (direction to admit child to specified school) insert—

“(3A) A direction under this section to admit a child shall not specify a school which has in place admission arrangements that make provision for selection by ability falling within section 99(2)(c) unless the child satisfies the selection criteria.”

#### Commencement Information

**I36** S. 43 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, Sch. 2 (with arts. 9-11)

#### 44 Power to require provision of education by further education institution

(1) Before section 52 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13) insert—

##### “51A Duty to provide for named individuals: England

(1) This section applies to an institution in England within the further education sector which provides education suitable to the requirements of persons over compulsory school age but under the age of 19.

(2) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] may by notice given to the governing body of such an institution—

- (a) require them to provide specified individuals with such education falling within subsection (1) as is appropriate to the individuals' abilities and aptitudes;
- (b) withdraw such a requirement.

(3) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] may specify an individual in a notice under subsection (2) only if the individual—

- (a) is in the authority's area, and
- (b) is over compulsory school age but under the age of 19.

(4) Before giving a notice under subsection (2) imposing a requirement on a governing body, a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must consult—

- (a) the governing body, and
- (b) such other persons as the authority think appropriate.

(5) The governing body of an institution within subsection (1) must secure compliance with a requirement that has been imposed under subsection (2) and has not been withdrawn.

(6) In deciding whether to require a particular institution to provide education to a particular individual under subsection (2) a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.”

(2) In section 52 of that Act—

- (a) in subsection (1) after “institution” insert “ in Wales ”;

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(b) in the title, at the end insert “ : Wales ”.

**Commencement Information**

**I37** S. 44 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, Sch. 2 (with arts. 9-11)

PROSPECTIVE

*The core and additional entitlements*

**45 Duties in relation to the core and additional entitlements**

After section 17 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) insert—

*“The [F35 core entitlement]: England*

**17A Duties in relation to the [F36 core entitlement]**

(1) A [F33 local authority] in England must exercise their functions in such a way as to secure that the [F37 core entitlement is] satisfied in relation to persons in their area who are over compulsory school age but under 19.

F38 ( 2 ) . . . . .

F38 ( 3 ) . . . . .

F38 ( 4 ) . . . . .

F38 ( 5 ) . . . . .

(6) In exercising their functions as required by this section, a [F33 local authority] in England must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

(7) In this section—

F39

...

F39

...

“ the core entitlement ” has the meaning given by section 17C.

F40 ( 8 ) . . . . .

(9) The [F41 reference in subsection (1)] to persons in a [F33 local authority]'s area who are over compulsory school age but under 19 [F41 does] not include persons who are subject to a detention order.

**17B Entitlement to education and training for 16 to 18 year olds**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### 17C The core entitlement

[<sup>F43</sup>(A1) A person over compulsory school age but under 19 has the core entitlement.]

- (1) The core entitlement is an entitlement to follow a course of study in each of the core subjects chosen by the person [<sup>F44</sup>who has ] the entitlement (the “chosen core subjects”).
- (2) The core subjects are—
  - (a) mathematics;
  - (b) English;
  - (c) information and communication technology.
- (3) The core entitlement is satisfied in relation to a person if a course of study in each of the chosen core subjects is made available to the person at a school or institution.
- (4) A person's entitlement to follow a course of study in one of the chosen core subjects ceases if—
  - (a) a course of study in the subject is made available to the person, but
  - (b) the person does not begin the course of study before reaching the age of 19.

[<sup>F45</sup>(5) In this section “ course of study ” means a course of education or training leading to a qualification specified, or a qualification of a description specified, by the Secretary of State by order for the purposes of this subsection.  
]

### 17D The additional entitlement

.....”

#### Textual Amendments

- F35** Words in s. 45 substituted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(2)** , 82(2)(b)
- F36** Words in s. 45 substituted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(3)(f)** , 82(2)(b)
- F37** Words in s. 45 substituted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(3)(a)** , 82(2)(b)
- F38** Words in s. 45 omitted (15.1.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(3)(b)** , 82(2)(b)
- F39** Words in s. 45 omitted (15.1.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(3)(c)** , 82(2)(b)
- F40** Words in s. 45 omitted (15.1.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(3)(d)** , 82(2)(b)
- F41** Words in s. 45 substituted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(3)(e)** , 82(2)(b)
- F42** Words in s. 45 omitted (15.1.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(4)** , 82(2)(b)
- F43** Words in s. 45 inserted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(5)(a)** , 82(2)(b)
- F44** Words in s. 45 substituted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(5)(b)** , 82(2)(b)
- F45** Words in s. 45 inserted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(5)(c)** , 82(2)(b)
- F46** Words in s. 45 omitted (15.1.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 30(6)** , 82(2)(b)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Boarding accommodation: persons subject to learning difficulty assessment*

#### 46 **Boarding accommodation: persons subject to learning difficulty assessment**

After section 514 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) insert—

##### **“514A Provision of boarding accommodation for persons subject to learning difficulty assessment**

- (1) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England may secure the provision of boarding accommodation in connection with the provision of education or training for a person in their area who is—
  - (a) over compulsory school age but under 25, and
  - (b) subject to learning difficulty assessment.
- (2) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] may secure the provision of boarding accommodation under subsection (1) either within or outside their area.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1) it is immaterial who provides, or secures the provision of, the education or training.
- (4) In this section “education” and “training” have the same meanings as in section 15ZA.”

##### **Commencement Information**

**I38** S. 46 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, Sch. 2 (with arts. 9-11)

*Work experience*

#### 47 **Work experience for persons over compulsory school age**

After section 560 of the Education Act 1996 insert—

##### **“560A Work experience for persons over compulsory school age: England**

- (1) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England may secure the provision of work experience for persons in their area—
  - (a) who are over compulsory school age but under 19, or
  - (b) who are aged 19 or over but under 25 and are subject to learning difficulty assessment.
- (2) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England must—
  - (a) encourage participation in work experience by persons in their area who are within subsection (1)(a) or (b);
  - (b) encourage employers to participate in the provision of work experience for such persons.”

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I39** S. 47 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, Sch. 2 (with arts. 9-11)

### *Persons detained in youth accommodation*

## 48 Provision of education for persons subject to youth detention

After section 18 of the Education Act 1996 insert—

### “18A Provision of education for persons subject to youth detention

- (1) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must secure that—
- (a) enough suitable education is provided to meet the reasonable needs of children subject to youth detention in their area;
  - (b) enough suitable education and training is provided to meet the reasonable needs of persons who are—
    - (i) over compulsory school age but under 19, and
    - (ii) subject to youth detention in their area.
- (2) In deciding for the purposes of subsection (1) whether education or training is suitable to meet persons' reasonable needs, a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must (in particular) have regard to—
- (a) the persons' ages, abilities and aptitudes;
  - (b) any special educational needs or learning difficulties (within the meaning of section 15ZA(6) and (7)) the persons may have;
  - (c) the desirability of enabling persons to complete programmes of study or training which they have begun;
  - (d) any relevant curriculum and the desirability that education received by persons subject to youth detention should be comparable with education which they could be expected to receive if they were attending a school or institution implementing a relevant curriculum;
  - (e) the desirability of the core entitlement <sup>F47</sup>... being satisfied in relation to persons over compulsory school age but under 19 <sup>F47</sup>....
- (3) In subsection (2)(d), “relevant curriculum” means—
- (a) in relation to a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England, the National Curriculum for England established under section 87 of the Education Act 2002 as subsisting for the time being;
  - (b) in relation to a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in Wales—
    - (i) the National Curriculum for Wales established under section 108 of that Act as subsisting for the time being, or
    - (ii) any local curriculum formed by the authority under section 116A of the Education Act 2002 (formation of local curricula for pupils in Key Stage 4) or for their area under section 33A of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (formation of local curricula for students aged 16 to 18).
- [<sup>F48</sup>(4) Section 17C (the core entitlement) applies for the purposes of subsection (2) (e).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Any arrangements made by a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] under subsection (1) for the provision by another person (the “learning provider”) of education or training must require the learning provider, in making any determination as to the education or training to be provided for a particular person (“P”), to have regard to any information within subsection (6).
- (6) The information within this subsection is—
- (a) information provided under section 562F by a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] as to the level of P’s literacy and numeracy skills;
  - (b) any other information provided under section 562F by P’s home authority (within the meaning of Chapter 5A of Part 10) for the purpose of assisting a determination such as is mentioned in subsection (5).
- (7) In performing the duty imposed by subsection (1), a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must have regard to any guidance issued—
- (a) in the case of a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England, by the Secretary of State;
  - (b) in the case of a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in Wales, by the Welsh Ministers.
- (8) For the purposes of subsection (1), a person is subject to youth detention in the area of a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] if—
- (a) subject to a detention order, and
  - (b) detained in relevant youth accommodation in the area of the authority.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F47** Words in s. 48 omitted (15.1.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 30(7)(a)**, 82(2)(b)

**F48** Words in s. 48 substituted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 30(7)(b)**, 82(2)(b)

#### Commencement Information

**I40** S. 48 in force at 1.9.2010 for specified purposes for E. by [S.I. 2010/303](#), **art. 6**, **Sch. 5** (with **arts. 9-11**)

## 49 Persons detained in youth accommodation: application of provisions

- (1) Section 562 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (Act not to apply to persons detained under order of a court) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- (a) for “detained in pursuance of an order made by a court or of an order of recall made by the Secretary of State” substitute “subject to a detention order and is detained in accommodation that is not relevant youth accommodation”, and
  - (b) for “a person who is detained in pursuance of such an order” substitute “such a person”.
- (3) After that subsection insert—
- “(1A) For the purposes of this Act—
- (a) a person is subject to a detention order if detained in pursuance of—
    - (i) an order made by a court, or
    - (ii) an order of recall made by the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) relevant youth accommodation is accommodation which—



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) is youth detention accommodation (within the meaning given by section 107(1) of the Powers of Criminal Courts (Sentencing) Act 2000), and
  - (ii) is not in a young offender institution, or part of such an institution, that is used wholly or mainly for the detention of persons aged 18 and over.”
- (4) In subsection (2), for “subsection (1)” substitute “ this section ”.
- (5) After that subsection add—
- “(3) A child or young person who is being kept in accommodation provided for the purpose of restricting liberty is not to be regarded for the purposes of this section as detained in pursuance of an order made by a court by reason of the fact that a court has authorised the person to be kept in such accommodation under section 25(4) of the Children Act 1989 (use of accommodation for restricting liberty).”
- (6) In the title, after “apply to” insert “ certain ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I41** S. 49 in force at 1.9.2010 for specified purposes for E. by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. 5](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#))

**I42** S. 49 in force at 1.4.2011 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2011/829](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

## 50 Persons detained in youth accommodation: further provision

After section 562 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) insert—

“**CHAPTER 5** PERSONS DETAINED IN YOUTH ACCOMMODATION Provisions applying to detained persons

### 562A Application of Act to detained persons

- (1) In its application in relation to detained persons, this Act has effect subject to modifications prescribed by regulations made by the appropriate national authority.
- (2) The power conferred by subsection (1) may not be exercised to modify the application of a provision of this Act if—
  - (a) the provision makes special provision in relation to detained persons, or a description of detained persons,
  - (b) the application of the provision in relation to detained persons, or a description of detained persons, is excluded by provision made by this Act, or
  - (c) the provision has effect in relation to detained persons, or a description of detained persons, subject to modifications made by this Act.
- (3) References in this Chapter to a detained person are to a child or young person who is—
  - (a) subject to a detention order, and
  - (b) detained in relevant youth accommodation;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

and, in provisions applying on a person's release, also include references to a person who, immediately before release, was a detained person.

### **562B Duty to take steps to promote fulfilment of potential**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies in relation to a detained person who is not a looked after child.
- (2) The home authority must—
  - (a) during the period of detention in relevant youth accommodation, and
  - (b) on the person's release from detention in relevant youth accommodation,
 take such steps as they consider appropriate to promote the person's fulfilment of his or her learning potential.
- (3) Those steps must include, where it appears to the home authority appropriate for them to do so, making arrangements for the provision, on the person's release from detention—
  - (a) of education, or
  - (b) in the case of a person who is over compulsory school age, of education or training.
- (4) Where the host authority make any determination as to the education or training to be provided for a detained person, the authority must have regard to—
  - (a) any information provided under section 562F by a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] as to the level of the person's literacy and numeracy skills;
  - (b) any other information provided by the home authority under section 562F for the purpose of assisting any such determination.

### **562C Detained persons with special educational needs**

- (1) This section applies where, immediately before the beginning of the detention, a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] were maintaining a statement under section 324 for a detained person.
- (2) The authority must keep the statement while the person is detained in relevant youth accommodation.
- (3) The host authority must use best endeavours to secure that appropriate special educational provision is made for the detained person while the person is detained in relevant youth accommodation.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3), appropriate special educational provision is—
  - (a) the special educational provision that, immediately before the beginning of the detention, was specified in the statement,
  - (b) educational provision corresponding as closely as practicable to the special educational provision so specified, or
  - (c) if it appears to the host authority that the special educational provision so specified is no longer appropriate for the person, such special educational provision as reasonably appears to the host authority to be appropriate for the person.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### **562D Appropriate special educational provision: arrangements between [F34]local authorities]**

- (1) This section applies where special educational provision is secured for a person in circumstances where section 562C applies.
- (2) A [F33]local authority] may supply goods and services to—
  - (a) the host authority, or
  - (b) any other person making the special educational provision in question.
- (3) Goods and services may be supplied under subsection (2) only for the purpose of assisting the making or securing of that special educational provision.

### **562E Literacy and numeracy assessments**

- (1) This section applies in relation to a detained person who is detained in particular relevant youth accommodation.
- (2) The host authority must arrange for the level of the detained person's literacy and numeracy skills to be assessed as soon as reasonably practicable after the beginning of the period during which the person is detained in that accommodation.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply if the authority are satisfied that they have evidence of the current level of the person's literacy and numeracy skills.
- (4) The “current level” of a detained person's literacy and numeracy skills is the level of those skills at the beginning of the period during which the person is detained in the relevant youth accommodation in question.

Provision of information relating to detained persons

### **562F Provision of information about detained persons**

- (1) Any person who has provided education or training for a detained person (whether before or during the period of detention) may provide information relating to the detained person to—
  - (a) the home authority, or
  - (b) the host authority,
 for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision of education or training for the detained person.
- (2) A [F33]local authority] must, on a request under subsection (3), as soon as practicable provide to the person making the request such information that they hold relating to a detained person as is requested.
- (3) A request is made under this subsection if it—
  - (a) is made by a person within subsection (4), and
  - (b) asks only for information which the person requires for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision of education or training for the detained person (including education or training to be provided after the detained person's release from detention).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) Those persons are—
- (a) any other [<sup>F33</sup>local authority];
  - (b) a youth offending team established under section 39 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998;
  - (c) the person in charge of any place at which the detained person is detained or is expected to be detained;
  - (d) any person providing or proposing to provide education or training for the detained person.
- (5) The Welsh Ministers must, on a request by the home authority or the host authority, provide a copy of any relevant assessment report for the purposes of the exercise of any function of that authority under section 18A or this Chapter.
- (6) In subsection (5), “relevant assessment report” means a report of an assessment of a detained person conducted (whether before or during the period of detention)—
- (a) under section 140 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000, and
  - (b) by virtue of arrangements made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (7) Subsection (8) applies in relation to a detained person if it appears to the host authority that the person is to be released from detention in relevant youth accommodation.
- (8) The host authority must provide to the home authority any information they hold which—
- (a) relates to the detained person, and
  - (b) may be relevant for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision of education or training for the detained person after the release.
- (9) The information required to be provided under subsection (8) must be provided at such time as the host authority think reasonable for the purpose of enabling education or training to be provided for the detained person after the release.
- (10) Nothing in subsections (7) to (9) requires the host authority to provide to the home authority information which it appears to the host authority that the home authority already have.
- (11) In this section any reference to the host authority, in relation to a detained person, includes a reference to any [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in whose area the person is expected to be detained.

#### **562G Information to be provided where statement of special educational needs previously maintained**

- (1) This section applies in relation to a detained person if, immediately before the beginning of the detention, a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] were maintaining a statement under section 324 for the person.
- (2) Subsections (3) and (4) apply where the home authority become aware (whether by notice under section 39A(2) of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (detention of child or young person: [<sup>F34</sup>local authorities] to be notified) or otherwise)—
  - (a) that the person—
    - (i) has become subject to a detention order, and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (ii) is detained in relevant youth accommodation, or
  - (b) that the person has been transferred from one place of accommodation to another place of accommodation which is relevant youth accommodation.
- (3) If, immediately before the beginning of the detention, the home authority were maintaining the statement, they must send a copy of the statement to the host authority.
- (4) If the home authority are or become aware that, immediately before the beginning of the detention, another [F33local authority] were maintaining a statement for the person under section 324, they must notify the host authority—
  - (a) of that fact, and
  - (b) of the identity of that other [F33local authority].
- (5) The [F33local authority] who, immediately before the beginning of the detention, were maintaining the statement must, on a request by the host authority, send a copy of the statement to the host authority.
- (6) Subsections (7) and (8) apply where the person is released from detention in relevant youth accommodation.
- (7) The host authority must notify the following of the person's release—
  - (a) the home authority, and
  - (b) if different, the authority who, immediately before the beginning of the detention, were maintaining the statement under section 324.
- (8) If the home authority are not the authority who, immediately before the beginning of the detention, were maintaining the statement, the host authority must also notify the home authority—
  - (a) of the fact that immediately before the beginning of the detention a statement was being maintained for the person by a [F33local authority] under section 324, and
  - (b) of the identity of that authority.
- (9) Nothing in this section requires any [F33local authority] to notify another authority of any matter of which the other authority are already aware, or to send a copy of any statement to another authority who already have a copy of it.

#### **562H Release of detained person appearing to host authority to require assessment**

- (1) This section applies in relation to the release from detention in relevant youth accommodation of a detained person in relation to whom section 562G does not apply.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies where it appears to the host authority that the detained person will, on release, be a child within the meaning of Part 4.
- (3) If the host authority are of the opinion that the person has, or may have, special educational needs, they must, on the person's release, notify the home authority of their opinion.
- (4) Subsections (5) and (6) apply where, on release, the detained person—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) will be over compulsory school age, or
- (b) will cease to be of compulsory school age within one year.

(5) If—

- (a) the host authority are of the opinion that the person has, or may have, a learning difficulty (within the meaning of section 15ZA (6) and (7)), and
  - (b) the home authority are a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England,
- the host authority must, on the person's release, notify the home authority of their opinion.

(6) If—

- (a) the host authority are of the opinion that the person has, or may have, a learning difficulty (within the meaning of section 41 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (assessments relating to learning difficulties: Wales)) and
  - (b) the home authority are a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in Wales,
- the host authority must, on the person's release, notify the Welsh Ministers of their opinion.

Supplementary

### 562I Guidance

In performing their functions under this Chapter a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must have regard to any guidance issued by the appropriate national authority.

### 562J Interpretation of Chapter

(1) In this Chapter—

“the appropriate national authority” means—

- (a) in relation to England, the Secretary of State;
- (b) in relation to Wales, the Welsh Ministers;

“beginning of the detention”, in relation to a person detained in relevant youth accommodation, means—

- (a) the beginning of the period of detention in such accommodation, or
- (b) where that period is part of a continuous period, comprising periods of detention in relevant youth accommodation and in other accommodation, the beginning of that continuous period;

“detained person” has the meaning given by section 562A(3);

“the home authority”—

- (a) in relation to a child or young person who immediately before the beginning of the detention was, or at any time since then has been, a looked after child, means the [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] who are <sup>F49</sup>... looking after, or who have most recently been looking after, the person;
- (b) in relation to any other child or young person, means the [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in whose area the person is ordinarily resident;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“the host authority”, in relation to a child or young person detained in relevant youth accommodation, means the [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in whose area the child or young person is detained;

“looked after child” means a person who, for the purposes of the Children Act 1989 is a child looked after by a local authority; and references to the local authority looking after the person are to be read accordingly;

“young person” includes a person aged 18.

- (2) For the purposes of the definition of “beginning of the detention” in subsection (1), it is immaterial whether or not a period of detention is pursuant to a single order.
- (3) In determining for the purpose of subsection (1) where a child or young person is ordinarily resident, any period when the person is subject to a detention order is to be disregarded.
- (4) Regulations made by the appropriate national authority may make further provision for determining where a person is ordinarily resident for the purpose of that subsection.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 16(3)**

**F49** Words in s. 50 repealed (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(4), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1**

#### Commencement Information

**I43** S. 50 in force at 1.9.2010 for specified purposes for E. by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 6, **Sch. 5** (with arts. 9-11)

**I44** S. 50 in force at 1.4.2011 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2011/829](#), art. 2(b)

## 51 Detention of child or young person: [<sup>F34</sup>local authorities] to be notified

After section 39 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 (c. 37) insert—

### “39A Detention of child or young person: [<sup>F34</sup>local authorities] to be notified

- (1) Subsection (2) applies where a youth offending team becomes aware that—
  - (a) a child or young person has become subject to a detention order and is detained in relevant youth accommodation, or
  - (b) a child or young person who is subject to a detention order has been transferred from one place of accommodation to another which is relevant youth accommodation.
- (2) The youth offending team must as soon as practicable notify—
  - (a) the home [<sup>F33</sup>local authority], and
  - (b) the host [<sup>F33</sup>local authority],
 of the place where the child or young person is detained.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Subsection (4) applies where a youth offending team becomes aware that a person has been released having immediately before release been—
- (a) subject to a detention order, and
  - (b) detained in relevant youth accommodation.
- (4) The youth offending team must as soon as practicable notify the following authorities of the release—
- (a) the home [<sup>F33</sup>local authority];
  - (b) the host [<sup>F33</sup>local authority];
  - (c) any other [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in whose area the youth offending team expects the person to live on release.
- (5) Nothing in this section requires a youth offending team to notify a [<sup>F34</sup>local authority] of any matter of which the authority is already aware.
- (6) In this section—
- “home [<sup>F33</sup>local authority]”, in relation to a child or young person, means the [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] which is the home authority in relation to that person within the meaning of Chapter 5A of Part 10 of the Education Act 1996 (persons detained in youth accommodation);
- “host [<sup>F33</sup>local authority]”, in relation to a child or young person who is detained in relevant youth accommodation, means the [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] for the area in which that person is detained;
- [<sup>F50</sup>“local authority” has the meaning given by section 579(1) of the Education Act 1996; ]
- “young person” includes a person who is aged 18;
- and references in this section to a person subject to a detention order and to relevant youth accommodation have the same meanings as they have in the Education Act 1996 (see section 562(1A) of that Act).”

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 16(3)**

**F50** Words in s. 51 inserted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(5)**

#### Commencement Information

**I45** S. 51 in force at 1.9.2010 for E. by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 6, **Sch. 5** (with arts. 9-11)

**I46** S. 51 in force at 1.4.2011 for W. by [S.I. 2011/829](#), **art. 2(c)**

## 52 Release from detention of child or young person with special educational needs

- (1) The Education Act 1996 (c. 56) is amended as follows.
- (2) After section 312 insert—



**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### “312A Children subject to detention

- (1) No provision of, or made under, this Part applies in relation to a child who is subject to a detention order and detained in relevant youth accommodation.
  - (2) The following provisions of this section apply where a child who has been subject to a detention order is released having, immediately before release, been detained in relevant youth accommodation.
  - (3) Subject to subsection (6), a statement which was maintained for the child by a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] under section 324 immediately before the beginning of the detention is, from the child's release, to be treated as being maintained by that authority under section 324.
  - (4) In subsection (3) “the beginning of the detention” means—
    - (a) the beginning of the period of detention in relevant youth accommodation, or
    - (b) where that period is part of a continuous period, comprising periods of detention in relevant youth accommodation and in other accommodation, the beginning of that continuous period.
  - (5) For the purposes of subsection (4), it is immaterial whether or not a period of detention is pursuant to a single order.
  - (6) Where, on the child's release, a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] (“the new authority”) other than the authority mentioned in subsection (3) (“the old authority”) becomes responsible for the child for the purposes of this Part—
    - (a) the old authority must transfer the statement to the new authority, and
    - (b) from the child's release, the statement is to be treated as being maintained by the new authority under section 324.”
- (3) In section 328(5) (reviews of educational needs), at the end of paragraph (a) (but before “and”) insert—
- “(aa) where the child concerned—
    - (i) has been subject to a detention order, and
    - (ii) immediately before release was detained in relevant youth accommodation,
 on the child's release from detention,”.

#### Commencement Information

**I47** S. 52 in force at 1.9.2010 for E. by S.I. 2010/303, art. 6, Sch. 5 (with arts. 9-11)

**I48** S. 52 in force at 1.4.2011 for W. by S.I. 2011/829, art. 2(d)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Transport in England

#### 53 Provision of transport etc for persons of sixth form age: duty to have regard to section 15ZA duty

In section 509AB(3) of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (provision of transport etc for persons of sixth form age in England: matters to which [<sup>F34</sup>local authorities] must have regard) after paragraph (b) insert—

“(ba) what they are required to do under section 15ZA(1) in relation to persons of sixth form age,”.

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 16\(3\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I49** S. 53 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#))

#### 54 Transport policy statements for persons of sixth form age: consultation

In section 509AB(6) of the Education Act 1996 (people to be consulted when preparing transport policy statements for persons of sixth form age in England), in paragraph (c), before “and” insert—

“(ca) persons in the [<sup>F33</sup>local authority]'s area who will be of sixth form age when the statement has effect, and their parents,”.

#### Commencement Information

**I50** S. 54 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [arts. 8-11](#))

#### 55 Transport policy statements for persons of sixth form age: content and publication

(1) In section 509AB of the Education Act 1996 (provision about transport policy statements for persons of sixth form age in England), after subsection (7) insert—

“(7A) In preparing and publishing a statement under section 509AA, a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must have regard (among other things) to the need to—

- (a) include in the statement sufficient information about the matters that the statement must specify, and
- (b) publish the statement in time,

to enable persons who will be of sixth form age when the statement has effect and their parents to take reasonable account of those matters when choosing between different establishments at which education or training is provided.”

(2) In section 509AA(10) of that Act (time by which transport policy statements for persons of sixth form age in England must be published) for “by substituting a different date for 31st May” substitute “to change the time by which the statement must be published”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I51** S. 55 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#))

## 56 Complaints about transport arrangements etc for persons of sixth form age

- (1) The Education Act 1996 is amended as follows.
- (2) After section 509AD (<sup>F34</sup>local authorities] in England: duty to have regard to religion or belief in exercise of travel functions) insert—

### “509AE Complaints about transport arrangements etc for persons of sixth form age in England

- (1) A <sup>F33</sup>local authority] may revise a statement prepared under section 509AA to change the arrangements specified under subsection (2) or (3) of that section if, as a result of a sixth form transport complaint, they have come to consider the change necessary for the purpose of the arrangements specified under the subsection in question.
- (2) A <sup>F33</sup>local authority] must revise a statement prepared under section 509AA to change the arrangements specified under subsection (2) or (3) of that section if, as a result of a sixth form transport complaint, the Secretary of State has directed them to do so.
- (3) An authority that revise a statement under subsection (1) or (2) must publish the revised statement and a description of the revision as soon as practicable.
- (4) The Secretary of State need not consider whether to exercise any power under sections 496 to 497A (powers to prevent unreasonable exercise of functions, etc), section 509AA(9) (power to require <sup>F33</sup>local authority] to make additional transport arrangements), or subsection (2) of this section in response to a matter that is, or could have been, the subject of a sixth form transport complaint made to him or her unless satisfied that—
  - (a) the matter has been brought to the notice of the <sup>F33</sup>local authority] concerned, and
  - (b) the authority have had a reasonable opportunity to investigate the matter and respond.
- (5) In this section “sixth form transport complaint” means a complaint that is—
  - (a) about a <sup>F33</sup>local authority]'s exercise of, or failure to exercise, a function under sections 509AA to 509AD in relation to persons of sixth form age, and
  - (b) made by a person who is, or will be, a person of sixth form age when the matter complained of has effect, or by a parent of such a person, and “sixth form age” is to be construed in accordance with section 509AC(1).
- (6) For the purposes of sections 509AA(8) and (9), 509AB(1) to (5), 509AC and 509AD, the revision of a statement under this section is to be treated as the preparation of a statement under section 509AA.
- (7) Where a <sup>F33</sup>local authority] have published in a single document a statement prepared under section 508G and a statement prepared under 509AA, the

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

requirement to publish a revised statement under subsection (3) is to be treated as a requirement to publish a version of the document that includes the revised statement.”

- (3) In section 509AA (provision of transport etc for persons of sixth form age), at the end insert—

“(11) Subsection (9) is subject to section 509AE (complaints about transport arrangements etc for persons of sixth form age in England).”

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), [Sch. 2 para. 16\(3\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I52** S. 56 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#))

### 57 <sup>[F34]</sup>Local authorities] in England: provision of transport etc for adult learners

- (1) The Education Act 1996 (c. 56) is amended as follows.  
 (2) After section 508E (<sup>[F34]</sup>Local authorities] in England: school travel schemes) insert—

#### <sup>[F34c]</sup>Local authorities] in England: provision of transport etc for adult learners

- (1) A <sup>[F33]</sup>local authority] in England must make such arrangements for the provision of transport and otherwise as they consider necessary, or as the Secretary of State may direct, for the purposes mentioned in subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) The first purpose is to facilitate the attendance of adults receiving education at institutions—
- maintained or assisted by the authority and providing further or higher education (or both), or
  - within the further education sector.
- (3) The second purpose is to facilitate the attendance of relevant young adults receiving education or training at institutions outside both the further and higher education sectors, but only in cases where the <sup>[F33]</sup>local authority] have secured for the adults in question—
- the provision of education or training at the institution in question, and
  - the provision of boarding accommodation under section 514A.
- (4) Any transport provided under subsection (1) must be provided free of charge.
- (5) In considering what arrangements it is necessary to make under subsection (1) in relation to relevant young adults, a <sup>[F33]</sup>local authority] must have regard to what they are required to do under section 15ZA(1) in relation to those persons.
- (6) In considering whether they are required by subsection (1) to make arrangements in relation to a particular adult, a <sup>[F33]</sup>local authority] must have

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

regard (among other things) to the age of the adult and the nature of the route, or alternative routes, which the adult could reasonably be expected to take.

- (7) Arrangements made under subsection (1) by virtue of subsection (3) to facilitate full-time education or training at an institution outside both the further and higher education sectors must be no less favourable than the arrangements made for relevant young adults of the same age for whom the authority secure the provision of education at another institution.
- (8) A <sup>[F33]</sup>local authority] in England may pay all or part of the reasonable travelling expenses of an adult—
- (a) receiving education or training at an institution mentioned in subsection (2) or (3), and
  - (b) for whose transport no arrangements are made under subsection (1).
- (9) In this section—
- “adult” means a person who is neither a child nor a person of sixth form age,
- “sixth form age” is to be construed in accordance with section 509AC(1), and
- “relevant young adult” means an adult who is aged under 25 and is subject to learning difficulty assessment.

**<sup>[F34]</sup>Local authorities] in England: transport policy statements etc for young adults subject to learning difficulty assessment**

- (1) A <sup>[F33]</sup>local authority] in England making arrangements, or proposing to pay travelling expenses, under section 508F in relation to relevant young adults must consult—
- (a) any other <sup>[F33]</sup>local authority] that they consider it appropriate to consult,
  - (b) governing bodies of institutions within the further education sector in the authority's area,
  - (c) persons in the <sup>[F33]</sup>local authority]'s area who will be relevant young adults when the arrangements or payments have effect, and their parents,
  - (d) the Secretary of State, and
  - (e) any other person specified by the Secretary of State.
- (2) The authority must prepare for each academic year a transport policy statement complying with the following requirements.
- (3) The statement must specify any transport or other arrangements, and any payment of travelling expenses, made or to be made in relation to the year under section 508F in relation to relevant young adults.
- (4) The statement must also specify any travel concessions (within the meaning of Part 5 of the Transport Act 1985) which are to be provided under any scheme established under section 93 of that Act to relevant young adults receiving education or training at an institution mentioned in subsection (2) or (3) of section 508F.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (5) The authority must publish the statement by the end of May in the year in which the relevant academic year begins.
- (6) In preparing and publishing the statement, the authority must have regard (among other things) to the need to—
  - (a) include in the statement sufficient information about the matters that the statement must specify, and
  - (b) publish the statement in time,
 

to enable relevant young adults and their parents to take reasonable account of those matters when choosing between different institutions at which education or training is provided.
- (7) The publication of a statement under this section in relation to an academic year does not prevent an authority from—
  - (a) making additional arrangements or payments under section 508F in relation to the academic year, or
  - (b) providing additional travel concessions in relation to the academic year.
- (8) The Secretary of State may amend subsection (5) by order to change the time by which the statement must be published.
- (9) In this section—
  - “academic year” has the meaning given in section 509AC,
  - “governing body” has the meaning given in section 509AC, and
  - “relevant young adult” has the meaning given in section 508F.

#### **508H Guidance: sections 508F and 508G**

In making arrangements under section 508F(1) and preparing and publishing a statement under section 508G, a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State under this section.

#### **508I Complaints about transport arrangements etc for young adults subject to learning difficulty assessment: England**

- (1) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] may revise a statement prepared under section 508G to change any matter specified under subsection (3) of that section if, as a result of a relevant young adult transport complaint, they have come to consider the change necessary for a purpose mentioned in section 508F(2) or (3).
- (2) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] must revise a statement prepared under section 508G to change any matter specified in subsection (3) of that section if, as a result of a relevant young adult transport complaint, the Secretary of State has directed them to do so.
- (3) An authority that revise a statement under subsection (1) or (2) must publish the revised statement and a description of the revision as soon as practicable.
- (4) The Secretary of State need not consider whether to exercise any power under sections 496 to 497A (powers to prevent unreasonable exercise of functions, etc) or subsection (2) of this section in response to a matter that is, or could

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

have been, the subject of a relevant young adult transport complaint made to him or her unless satisfied that—

- (a) the matter has been brought to the notice of the [F33]local authority concerned, and
- (b) the authority have had a reasonable opportunity to investigate the matter and respond.

(5) In this section “relevant young adult transport complaint” means a complaint that is—

- (a) about a [F33]local authority's exercise of, or failure to exercise, a function under section 508F or 508G in relation to relevant young adults, and
  - (b) made by a person who is, or will be, a relevant young adult when the matter complained of has effect, or by a parent of such a person,
- and “relevant young adult” has the meaning given in section 508F.

(6) For the purposes of sections 508G(7) and 508H, the revision of a statement under this section is to be treated as the preparation of a statement under section 508G.

(7) Where a [F33]local authority have published in a single document a statement prepared under section 509AA and a statement prepared under 508G, the requirement to publish a revised statement under subsection (3) is to be treated as a requirement to publish a version of the document that includes the revised statement.”

(3) In section 509AD(2) ([F34]Local authorities] in England: duty to have regard to religion or belief in exercise of travel functions) for the entry relating to section 508F substitute—

“section 508F ([F34]Local authorities] in England: provision of transport etc for adult learners);”.

(4) Section 509 (provision of transport etc) ceases to have effect.

(5) Section 81 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40) ([F34]Local authorities] in England: provision of transport etc for certain adult learners) ceases to have effect.

#### Textual Amendments

**F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 16(3)**

#### Commencement Information

**I53** S. 57 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 8-11)

### *Powers in respect of non-maintained schools*

#### **58 Power of [F34]local authorities] to arrange provision of education at non-maintained schools**

(1) The following provisions cease to have effect—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) section 128 of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31), and
- (b) paragraph 64 of Schedule 30 to that Act.
- (2) Accordingly, sections 16 and 18 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (powers of [<sup>F34</sup>local authorities] to assist, and arrange provision of education at, non-maintained schools) continue to have effect as if the provisions mentioned in subsection (1) had never been enacted.

#### Textual Amendments

- F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 16(3)**

### General

## 59 Minor and consequential amendments

Schedule 2 contains minor and consequential amendments relating to the provision made by this Part.

#### Commencement Information

- I54** S. 59 in force at 12.1.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), **art. 2**, **Sch.**
- I55** S. 59 in force at 1.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/303](#), **art. 3**, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)
- I56** S. 59 in force at 1.9.2010 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2010/303](#), **art. 6**, **Sch. 5** (with arts. 9-11)

## PART 3

### THE YOUNG PEOPLE'S LEARNING AGENCY FOR ENGLAND

#### CHAPTER 1

##### ESTABLISHMENT

## <sup>F51</sup>60 The Young People's Learning Agency for England

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66**, 82(3); [S.I. 2012/924](#), **art. 2**



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER 2

### MAIN FUNCTIONS

#### *Funding*

#### **F5161 Provision of financial resources**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

#### **F5162 Financial resources: conditions**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

#### **F5163**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

#### **F5164 Means tests**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

#### **F5165 Prohibition on charging**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Securing provision of education and training*

#### **F5166 Securing provision of education and training**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

#### **F5167 Intervention for purpose of securing provision of education and training**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

### *Provision of services and assistance*

#### **F5168 Provision of services**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

#### **F5169 Assistance with respect to employment and training**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

#### **F5170 Assistance with respect to employment and training: Northern Ireland**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 66, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Miscellaneous

#### **F5171 Research, information and advice**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2

#### **F51[F52]71A Assistance etc. in relation to functions of the principal regulator**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2  
**F52** S. 71A inserted (1.8.2011) by [The Charities Act 2006 \(Principal Regulators of Exempt Charities\) Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1726\)](#), regs. 1(2), 7

#### **F5172 Guidance by YPLA**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2

#### **F5173 Intervention powers: policy statement**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2

#### **F5174 Power to confer supplementary functions on YPLA**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### CHAPTER 3

#### YPLA'S FUNCTIONS: SUPPLEMENTARY

##### **F5175 Directions by Secretary of State**

.....

###### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

##### **F5176 Guidance by Secretary of State**

.....

###### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

### CHAPTER 4

#### ACADEMY AGENCY ARRANGEMENTS

##### **F5177 Academy agency arrangements**

.....

###### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

##### **F5178 Grants for purposes of Academy agency arrangements functions**

.....

###### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

##### **F5179 Academy agency arrangements: information sharing**

.....

###### **Textual Amendments**

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 66, 82\(3\)](#); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER 5

### GENERAL

#### <sup>F51</sup>80 Interpretation of Part

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F51** Ss. 60-80 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. 66, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

### PART 4

#### [<sup>F53</sup> APPRENTICESHIPS AND ADULT EDUCATION AND TRAINING: ROLE OF SECRETARY OF STATE]

##### Textual Amendments

**F53** Pt. 4 title substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 31\(a\)](#)

### CHAPTER 1

#### [<sup>F54</sup> APPRENTICESHIPS AND ADULT EDUCATION AND TRAINING]

##### Textual Amendments

**F54** Pt. 4 Ch. 1 title substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 31\(b\)](#)

<sup>F55</sup> ...

##### Textual Amendments

**F55** S. 81 and preceding crossheading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 2](#)

#### <sup>F55</sup>81 The Chief Executive of Skills Funding

.....

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

F56 ...

#### Textual Amendments

**F56** S. 82 and preceding crossheading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 3](#)

### <sup>F56</sup>82 Apprenticeship functions

.....

*Apprenticeship training for persons aged 16 to 18 and certain young adults*

### 83 [<sup>F57</sup>Power to secure provision of apprenticeship training]

- (1) The [<sup>F58</sup>Secretary of State] may secure the provision of facilities for suitable apprenticeship training for persons—
- (a) who are over compulsory school age but under 19, or
  - (b) who are aged 19 or over but under 25 and [<sup>F59</sup>for whom an EHC plan is maintained] .

- (2) In deciding for the purposes of subsection (1) whether apprenticeship training is suitable for persons for whom facilities are provided, the [<sup>F58</sup>Secretary of State] must have regard (in particular) to—
- (a) the persons' ages, abilities and aptitudes,
  - (b) any [<sup>F60</sup>special educational needs] the persons may have,
  - (c) the quality of the training,
  - (d) the locations and times at which the training is provided.

- (3) In exercising the power conferred by subsection (1), the [<sup>F58</sup>Secretary of State] must have regard (in particular) to the desirability of—
- (a) encouraging diversity of apprenticeship training available to persons;
  - (b) increasing opportunities for persons to exercise choice;
  - (c) enabling persons to whom Part 1 of the Education and Skills Act 2008 (c. 25) applies to fulfil the duty imposed by section 2 of that Act (duty to participate in education or training).

<sup>F61</sup>(4) .....

- (5) In this Part “apprenticeship training” means training provided in connection with—
- <sup>F62</sup>(a) an approved English apprenticeship, or
  - (b) any contract of service (other than an approved English apprenticeship agreement) or contract of apprenticeship.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F57** S. 83 heading substituted (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 5](#); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F58** Words in s. 83(1)-(3) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 4](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F59** Words in s. 83(1)(b) substituted (1.9.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 89(a)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)
- F60** Words in s. 83(2)(b) substituted (1.9.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 89(b)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)
- F61** S. 83(4) omitted (1.9.2014) by virtue of Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 89(c)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)
- F62** S. 83(5)(a)(b) substituted for s. 83(5)(a)-(c) (26.5.2015) by Deregulation Act 2015 (c. 20), s. 115(7), **Sch. 1 para. 17**; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

#### Commencement Information

- I57** S. 83 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

### [<sup>F63</sup>83A The apprenticeship offer

- (1) The [<sup>F64</sup>Secretary of State] must secure the provision of proper facilities for apprenticeship training that is suitable to the requirements of persons who—
- are within subsection (4), (5) or (6), and
  - have an apprenticeship opportunity.

This is subject to section 83B (limit on scope of apprenticeship offer).

- (2) The duty imposed by subsection (1) is referred to in this section and section 83B as “the apprenticeship offer”.
- (3) An apprenticeship opportunity is an [<sup>F65</sup>opportunity to enter into an approved English apprenticeship.]
- (4) A person within this subsection is one who is over compulsory school age but under 19.
- (5) A person within this subsection is one who is not within subsection (4) and—
- is a person aged under 21 towards whom a local authority in England has the duties provided for in section 23C of the Children Act 1989 (continuing functions in relation to certain formerly looked after children), or
  - is a person to whom section 23CA of that Act applies (further assistance for certain formerly looked after children aged under 25), in relation to whom a local authority in England is the responsible local authority (within the meaning of that section).
- (6) A person within this subsection is one who—
- is not within subsection (4), and
  - is of a prescribed description.
- (7) If regulations under subsection (6)(b) describe a person by reference to an age or an age range, the age, or the upper age of the age range, must be less than 25.
- (8) Facilities are proper if they are—
- of a quantity sufficient to meet the reasonable needs of individuals, and
  - of a quality adequate to meet those needs.
- (9) Section 83(2) and (3) (when apprenticeship training is suitable, and matters to which [<sup>F66</sup>Secretary of State] must have regard) apply for the purposes of the apprenticeship offer.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F<sup>67</sup>(10) .....

F<sup>68</sup>(11) .....

(12) The Secretary of State may by order amend this section for the purpose of changing the descriptions of persons to whom the apprenticeship offer applies.

#### Textual Amendments

**F63** Ss. 83A, 83B inserted (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 69(2)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F64** Words in s. 83A(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 5(2)**

**F65** Words in s. 83A(3) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), **Sch. 1 para. 18(a)**; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

**F66** Words in s. 83A(9) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 5(2)**

**F67** S. 83A(10) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 5(3)**

**F68** S. 83A(11) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), **Sch. 1 para. 18(b)**; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

### 83B Limit on scope of the apprenticeship offer

(1) The [F<sup>69</sup>Secretary of State] is not required by the apprenticeship offer to secure the provision of facilities for apprenticeship training [F<sup>70</sup> for the purpose of assisting a person to achieve a particular approved apprenticeship standard if the person—

- (a) has already completed an approved English apprenticeship by achieving that standard,
- (b) has already completed an approved English apprenticeship by achieving another standard and, in doing so, appears to the Secretary of State to have demonstrated a comparable level of achievement (whether or not in the same sector of work), or
- (c) has worked under another arrangement and, in doing so, appears to the Secretary of State to have demonstrated a comparable level of achievement (whether or not in the same sector of work).]

[ Section A1(6) and (7) (which make provision about when a person completes an F<sup>71</sup>(1A) approved English apprenticeship and about the meaning of “approved apprenticeship standard”) apply for the purposes of subsection (1).]

F<sup>72</sup>(2) .....

F<sup>72</sup>(3) .....

F<sup>72</sup>(4) .....

F<sup>72</sup>(5) .....]

#### Textual Amendments

**F63** Ss. 83A, 83B inserted (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 69(2)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F69** Words in s. 83B(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 6**



**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F70** Words in s. 83B(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), **Sch. 1 para. 19(2)**; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)
- F71** S. 83B(1A) inserted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), **Sch. 1 para. 19(3)**; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)
- F72** Ss. 83B(2)-(5) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), **Sch. 1 para. 19(4)**; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

**<sup>F73</sup>84 Arrangements and co-operation with [<sup>F34</sup>local authorities]**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), **Sch. 2 para. 16(3)**
- F73** S. 84 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 7**

**<sup>F75</sup>85 [<sup>F74</sup>Provision of apprenticeship training etc for persons within section 83 or 83A]**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F74** S. 85 heading substituted (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 70(2)(d)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3
- F75** S. 85 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 8**

*Education and training for persons aged 19 or over etc.*

**86 Education and training for persons aged 19 or over and others subject to adult detention**

- (1) [<sup>F76</sup>The Secretary of State must secure the provision of such facilities as the Secretary of State considers appropriate] for—
  - (a) education suitable to the requirements of persons who are aged 19 or over, other than persons aged under 25 [<sup>F77</sup>for whom an EHC plan is maintained] ,
  - (b) education suitable to the requirements of persons who are subject to adult detention, and
  - (c) training suitable to the requirements of persons within paragraphs (a) and (b).

- (2) This section does not apply to the provision of facilities to the extent that section [<sup>F78</sup>83A or] 87 applies to the provision of those facilities.

<sup>F79</sup>(3) .....

<sup>F80</sup>(4) .....

- (5) For the purposes of this section a reference to the provision of facilities for education or training (except so far as relating to facilities for persons subject to adult detention)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

includes a reference to the provision of facilities for organised leisure-time occupation in connection with education or (as the case may be) training.

(6) For the purposes of this section—

“education” includes full-time and part-time education;

“training” includes—

- (a) full-time and part-time training;
- (b) vocational, social, physical and recreational training;
- (c) apprenticeship training.

(7) In this Part, “organised leisure-time occupation” means leisure-time occupation, in such organised cultural training and recreational activities as are suited to the requirements of persons who fall within subsection (1)(a) or (b), for any such persons who are able and willing to profit by facilities provided for that purpose.

<sup>F81</sup>(8) . . . . .

#### Textual Amendments

- F76** Words in s. 86(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 9\(2\)](#)
- F77** Words in s. 86(1)(a) substituted (1.9.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 3 para. 90](#); [S.I. 2014/889](#), art. 7(a)
- F78** Words in s. 86(2) inserted (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 7](#); [S.I. 2012/1087](#), art. 3
- F79** S. 86(3) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 9\(3\)](#)
- F80** S. 86(4) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 9\(3\)](#)
- F81** S. 86(8) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 9\(3\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I58** S. 86 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

### 87 Learning aims for persons aged 19 or over: provision of facilities

- (1) [<sup>F82</sup>The Secretary of State must secure the provision of such facilities as the Secretary of State considers appropriate] for relevant education or training for persons falling within subsection (3) which is suitable to their requirements.
- (2) Relevant education or training is education or vocational training provided by means of a course of study for a qualification to which paragraph 1 of Schedule 5 applies.
- (3) The persons falling within this subsection are persons who—
  - (a) are aged 19 or over, and are not persons aged under 25 [<sup>F83</sup>for whom an EHC plan is maintained] ,
  - (b) do not have the qualification in question or one (including one awarded by a person outside England) which appears to the [<sup>F84</sup>Secretary of State] to be at a comparable or higher level, and
  - (c) satisfy such conditions as may be specified in regulations.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F85(4) .....

F86(5) .....

(6) For the purposes of this section—

“education” includes full-time and part-time education;

“training” includes full-time and part-time training.

#### Textual Amendments

**F82** Words in s. 87(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 10\(2\)](#)

**F83** Words in s. 87(3)(a) substituted (1.9.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 3 para. 91](#); [S.I. 2014/889](#), art. 7(a)

**F84** Words in s. 87(3)(b) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 10\(3\)](#)

**F85** S. 87(4) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 10\(4\)](#)

**F86** S. 87(5) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 10\(4\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I59** S. 87 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

## 88 Learning aims for persons aged 19 or over: payment of tuition fees

(1) Functions under this Part must be exercised by the [F87Secretary of State] so as to secure that a course of study for a qualification to which [F88paragraph 1(a) or (b)] of Schedule 5 applies is free to a person falling within subsection (2) if it is provided for the person by virtue of facilities whose provision is secured under section 87.

(2) A person falls within this subsection if, at the time of starting the course in question, the person—

(a) is aged 19 or over,

(b) does not have the qualification in question or one (including one awarded by a person outside England) which appears to the [F89Secretary of State] to be at a comparable or higher level, and

(c) satisfies such conditions as may be specified in regulations.

[F90(2A) Functions under this Part must be exercised by the [F91Secretary of State] so as to secure that a course of study for a qualification to which paragraph 1(c) of Schedule 5 applies is free to a person falling within subsection (4) if it is provided for the person by virtue of facilities whose provision is secured under section 87.]

(3) Functions under this Part must be exercised by the [F92Secretary of State] so as to secure that a course of study for a qualification to which paragraph 2 of Schedule 5 applies is free to a person falling within subsection (4) if it is provided for the person by virtue of facilities whose provision is secured under section 86.

(4) A person falls within this subsection if, at the time of starting the course in question, the person—

(a) is aged at least 19 but less than [F9324 ] ,

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) does not have the qualification in question or one (including one awarded by a person outside England) which appears to the [<sup>F94</sup>Secretary of State] to be at a comparable or higher level, and
  - (c) satisfies such conditions as may be specified in regulations.
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order—
- (a) amend subsection (2)(a) by substituting a different age for the age for the time being referred to;
  - (b) amend subsection (4)(a) by substituting a different age for either of the ages for the time being referred to.
- (6) For the purposes of this section, a course is free to a person if no tuition fees in respect of the provision of the course for the person are payable by a person other than—
- (a) the [<sup>F95</sup>Secretary of State] , or
  - (b) a body specified by order by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this section.
- (7) In subsection (6) “tuition fees”, in relation to a course, means—
- (a) the fees charged in respect of the course by the person providing it, and
  - (b) such fees in respect of other matters relating to the course (such as undergoing a preliminary assessment or sitting an examination) as may be specified in regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

- F87** Words in s. 88(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 11**
- F88** Words in s. 88(1) substituted (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 73(2)(a)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2
- F89** Words in s. 88(2) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 11**
- F90** S. 88(2A) inserted (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 73(2)(b)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2
- F91** Words in s. 88(2A) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 11**
- F92** Words in s. 88(3) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 11**
- F93** Word in s. 88(4)(a) substituted (1.8.2012 for specified purposes, 1.8.2013 in so far as not already in force) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 73(2)(c)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2; S.I. 2012/2213, art. 4
- F94** Words in s. 88(4) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 11**
- F95** Words in s. 88(6)(a) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 11**

#### Commencement Information

- I60** S. 88 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

## 89 Sections 87 and 88: supplementary

- (1) Regulations may make provision as to circumstances in which—
- (a) despite having a specified qualification, a person is to be treated for the purposes of section 87 or 88 as not having that qualification;

*Status:* Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) despite not having a specified qualification, a person is to be treated for any of those purposes as having that qualification.
- (2) A condition specified in regulations under section 87 or 88 may, in particular, relate to—
  - (a) the possession, or lack, of a specified qualification;
  - (b) the completion of, or failure to complete, a course for a specified qualification.
- (3) A reference in subsection (1) or (2) to a specified qualification is to a qualification specified, or of a description specified, in the regulations.
- (4) Regulations under this section, or under section 87 or 88, may confer a function (which may relate to the administration of an assessment and may include the exercise of a discretion) on a person specified, or of a description specified, in the regulations.
- (5) Nothing in section 87 or 88 applies to the provision of facilities, or to courses of study, for persons subject to adult detention.
- (6) Part 2 of Schedule 5 makes further provision for the purposes of sections 87 and 88.

#### Commencement Information

**I61** S. 89 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

## 90 Encouragement of education and training for persons aged 19 or over and others subject to adult detention

- (1) The [<sup>F96</sup>Secretary of State] must—
  - (a) encourage participation by persons within section 86(1)(a) and (b) in education and training within the [<sup>F97</sup>Secretary of State's remit under this Part] ;
  - (b) encourage employers to participate in the provision of education and training within the [<sup>F97</sup>Secretary of State's remit under this Part] for persons within section 86(1)(a);
  - (c) encourage employers to contribute to the costs of education and training within the [<sup>F97</sup>Secretary of State's remit under this Part] for such persons.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b), participating in the provision of training includes participating by entering into—
  - [<sup>F98</sup>(a) an approved English apprenticeship, or
  - (b) any contract of employment (other than an approved English apprenticeship agreement) in connection with which training is provided.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F96** Words in s. 90(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 12\(a\)](#)
- F97** Words in s. 90(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 12\(b\)](#)
- F98** S. 90(2)(a)(b) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 20](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Commencement Information

**I62** S. 90 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, Sch. 2 (with arts. 9-11)

PROSPECTIVE

## *The apprenticeship offer*

### **F<sup>99</sup>91** Duty to secure availability of apprenticeship places

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by Education Act 2011 (c. 21), s. 82(3), Sch. 18 para. 8; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

### **F<sup>99</sup>92** Election for apprenticeship offer

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by Education Act 2011 (c. 21), s. 82(3), Sch. 18 para. 8; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

### **F<sup>99</sup>93** Meaning of “apprenticeship place”

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by Education Act 2011 (c. 21), s. 82(3), Sch. 18 para. 8; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

### **F<sup>99</sup>94** Suitability and availability of apprenticeship places: further provision

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by Education Act 2011 (c. 21), s. 82(3), Sch. 18 para. 8; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

### **F<sup>99</sup>95** Apprenticeship offer requirements

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 8](#); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F9996 Apprenticeship offer requirements: interpretation**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 8](#); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F9997 Suspension of offer**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 8](#); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F9998 Power to amend apprenticeship offer**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 8](#); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F9999 Apprenticeship offer: interpretation**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F99** Ss. 91-99 repealed (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 8](#); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## CHAPTER 2

### [<sup>F100</sup>PROVISION OF SERVICES TO OTHER BODIES]

#### Textual Amendments

**F100** Pt. 4 Ch. 2 title substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 31\(c\)](#)

### *Funding*

#### 100 Provision of financial resources

- (1) The [<sup>F101</sup>Secretary of State] may secure the provision of financial resources [<sup>F102</sup>under this subsection] to—
- (a) persons providing or proposing to provide education or training within the [<sup>F103</sup>Secretary of State's remit under this Part] ;
  - (b) persons providing or proposing to provide goods or services in connection with the provision by others of such education or training;
  - (c) persons receiving or proposing to receive such education or training;
  - (d) persons aged 18 receiving or proposing to receive education or training;
  - (e) persons making loans to others receiving or proposing to receive education or training;
  - <sup>F104</sup>(f) .....
  - (g) persons undertaking or proposing to undertake research relating to education or training;
  - (h) persons carrying out means tests under arrangements made under section 103;
  - <sup>F105</sup>(i) .....
  - (j) persons providing or proposing to provide information, advice or guidance about education or training or connected matters (including employment).
- <sup>F106</sup>(1A) The Secretary of State may secure the provision of financial resources to any person under this subsection (whether or not the resources could be secured under subsection (1))—
- (a) for the purpose of encouraging the provision of opportunities for individuals to complete [<sup>F107</sup> English statutory apprenticeships ] or to undertake work following the completion of such apprenticeships, or
  - (b) otherwise in connection with [<sup>F107</sup> English statutory apprenticeships ] .]
- <sup>F108</sup>(2) .....
- (3) The [<sup>F109</sup>Secretary of State] may secure the provision of financial resources under subsection (1) [<sup>F110</sup>or (1A)] —
- (a) by providing the resources;
  - (b) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by another person;
  - (c) by making arrangements for the provision of resources by persons jointly (whether or not including the [<sup>F111</sup>Secretary of State] ).
- (4) The [<sup>F112</sup>Secretary of State] may under subsection (1)(c) [<sup>F113</sup>or (1A)] secure the provision of financial resources by reference to—



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any fees or charges payable by the person receiving or proposing to receive the education or training, or
- (b) any other matter (such as transport or childcare).

[<sup>F114</sup>(5) In this section “English statutory apprenticeship” has the same meaning as in section 40A (see subsection (3) of that section).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F101** Words in s. 100(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 13\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F102** Words in s. 100(1) inserted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(2\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- F103** Words in s. 100(1)(a) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 13\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F104** S. 100(1)(f) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 13\(2\)\(c\)](#)
- F105** S. 100(1)(i) omitted (1.9.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 9](#); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3
- F106** S. 100(1A) inserted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(3\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- F107** Words in s. 100(1A) substituted (4.7.2016) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), [ss. 27\(a\)](#), 44(5); S.I. 2016/695, art. 2(b)
- F108** S. 100(2) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 13\(3\)](#)
- F109** Words in s. 100(3) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 13\(4\)\(a\)](#)
- F110** Words in s. 100(3) inserted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(4\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- F111** Words in s. 100(3)(c) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 13\(4\)\(b\)](#)
- F112** Words in s. 100(4) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 13\(5\)](#)
- F113** Words in s. 100(4) inserted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 2\(5\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- F114** S. 100(5) inserted (4.7.2016) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), [ss. 27\(b\)](#), 44(5); S.I. 2016/695, art. 2(b)

#### Commencement Information

- I63** S. 100 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

## 101 Financial resources: conditions

- (1) Financial resources provided [<sup>F115</sup>by the Secretary of State under section 100] may be provided subject to conditions.
- (2) The conditions may [<sup>F116</sup>(among other things) ] include—
  - (a) information conditions;
  - (b) [<sup>F117</sup>operational conditions;]
  - (c) repayment conditions.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) Information conditions are conditions which—
- (a) require the [<sup>F118</sup>Secretary of State], or a person designated by the [<sup>F118</sup>Secretary of State], to be given access to a person's accounts and documents and to be given rights in relation to a person's computers and associated apparatus and material, or
  - (b) require a person to whom financial resources are provided to give to the [<sup>F119</sup>Secretary of State] such information as the [<sup>F119</sup>Secretary of State] may request for the purpose of carrying out [<sup>F120</sup>functions under this Part].
- (4) [<sup>F121</sup>Operational conditions are conditions which require a person providing or proposing to provide education or training (“the provider”) to make arrangements providing for all or any of the matters mentioned in subsection (5).]
- (5) [<sup>F122</sup>The matters are the following—
- (a) the charging of fees by the provider by reference to specified criteria;
  - (b) the making of awards by the provider by reference to specified criteria;
  - (c) the recovery by the provider of amounts from persons receiving education or training or from employers (or from both);
  - (d) the determination of amounts by reference to specified criteria where provision is made under paragraph (c);
  - (e) the operation of specified exemptions where provision is made under paragraph (c);
  - (f) the making by the provider of provision specified in [<sup>F123</sup>an EHC plan or] a report of an assessment under section <sup>F124</sup>... 140 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (c. 21) (assessments relating to learning difficulties).]
- (6) Repayment conditions are conditions which—
- (a) enable the [<sup>F125</sup>Secretary of State] to require the repayment (in whole or part) of sums paid by the [<sup>F125</sup>Secretary of State] if any of the conditions subject to which the sums were paid is not complied with;
  - (b) require the payment of interest in respect of any period in which a sum due to the [<sup>F126</sup>Secretary of State] in accordance with any condition is unpaid.

#### Textual Amendments

- F115** Words in s. 101(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 14\(2\)](#)
- F116** Words in s. 101(2) inserted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 3\(2\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- F117** S. 101(2)(b) omitted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 3\(2\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- F118** Words in s. 101(3)(a) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 14\(3\)\(a\)](#)
- F119** Words in s. 101(3)(b) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 14\(3\)\(b\)\(i\)](#)
- F120** Words in s. 101(3)(b) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 14\(3\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F121** S. 101(4) omitted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 3\(3\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- F122** S. 101(5) omitted (26.3.2015 for specified purposes, 26.5.2015 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(2)(e), [Sch. 1 para. 3\(3\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))
- F123** Words in s. 101(5)(f) inserted (1.9.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 3 para. 92\(a\)](#); S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)
- F124** Words in s. 101(5)(f) omitted (1.9.2014) by virtue of [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 3 para. 92\(b\)](#); S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)
- F125** Words in s. 101(6)(a) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 14\(4\)\(a\)](#)
- F126** Words in s. 101(6)(b) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 14\(4\)\(b\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I64** S. 101 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

## 102 Performance assessments

- (1) The [<sup>F127</sup>Secretary of State] may adopt or develop schemes for the assessment of the performance of persons in providing education or training within the [<sup>F128</sup>Secretary of State's remit under this Part] .
- (2) The [<sup>F129</sup>Secretary of State] may take the assessments into account in deciding how to exercise the powers under section 100.

#### Textual Amendments

- F127** Words in s. 102(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 15\(2\)\(a\)](#)
- F128** Words in s. 102(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 15\(2\)\(b\)](#)
- F129** Words in s. 102(2) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 15\(3\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I65** S. 102 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

## 103 Means tests

- (1) [<sup>F130</sup>For the purpose of the exercise of the powers under section 100(1)(c), (d) or (e), the Secretary of State] may—
  - (a) carry out means tests;
  - (b) arrange for other persons to carry out means tests.

<sup>F131</sup>(2) . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F130** Words in s. 103(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 16\(2\)](#)

**F131** S. 103(2) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 16\(3\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I66** S. 103 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#))

### *Apprenticeships: general*

#### <sup>F132</sup>**104 Assistance and support in relation to apprenticeship places**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F132** S. 104 repealed (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 10](#); [S.I. 2012/1087](#), [art. 3](#)

#### <sup>F133</sup>**105 Promoting progression from level 2 to level 3 apprenticeships**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F133** S. 105 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 21](#); [S.I. 2015/994](#), [art. 6\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. Pt. 2](#))

#### Commencement Information

**I67** S. 105 in force at 6.4.2011 by [S.I. 2011/200](#), [art. 3](#)

#### <sup>F134</sup>**106 Advice and assistance in relation to apprenticeships**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F134** S. 106 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 18](#)

### *Provision of services and assistance*

#### **107 Provision of services**

- (1) The [<sup>F135</sup>Secretary of State] may make arrangements with a permitted recipient for the provision by the [<sup>F135</sup>Secretary of State] of services that are required by the

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

permitted recipient in connection with the exercise of the recipient's functions relating to education or training.

(2) The services that may be provided under arrangements made under subsection (1) include—

- (a) providing accommodation and other facilities to a permitted recipient or managing such facilities on behalf of a permitted recipient;
- (b) procuring, or assisting in procuring, goods and services for use by a permitted recipient.

(3) The terms and conditions upon which the arrangements are made may include provision for making payments to the [<sup>F136</sup>Secretary of State] in respect of expenditure incurred by the [<sup>F136</sup>Secretary of State] in performing any function under the arrangements.

(4) In this section “permitted recipient” means—

- <sup>F137</sup>(a) .....
- (b) the Welsh Ministers;
- (c) the Scottish Ministers;
- (d) a Northern Ireland department;
- <sup>F138</sup>(e) .....
- (f) a person, wholly or partly funded from public funds, who has functions relating to education or training;
- (g) any other person specified, or of a description specified, by order made by the appropriate national authority for the purposes of this section.

<sup>F139</sup>(5) .....

(6) Before making arrangements under which it may provide services to a permitted recipient who falls within paragraph (a), (e), (f) or (g) of subsection (4) in connection with the exercise of the recipient's functions relating to education or training provided in Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland, the [<sup>F140</sup>Secretary of State] must obtain—

- (a) in relation to education or training provided in Wales, the consent of the Welsh Ministers;
- (b) in relation to education or training provided in Scotland, the consent of the Scottish Ministers;
- (c) in relation to education or training provided in Northern Ireland, the consent of the Minister for Employment and Learning in Northern Ireland.

(7) Consent may be given under subsection (5) or (6) in relation to particular arrangements or arrangements of a particular description.

(8) “The appropriate national authority” means—

- (a) in relation to a person exercising functions relating only to education or training provided in Wales, the Welsh Ministers;
- (b) in relation to a person exercising functions relating only to education or training provided in Scotland, the Scottish Ministers;
- (c) in relation to a person exercising functions relating only to education or training provided in Northern Ireland, the Department for Employment and Learning in Northern Ireland;
- (d) in any other case, the Secretary of State.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

- F135** Words in s. 107(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 19\(2\)](#)
- F136** Words in s. 107(3) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 19\(2\)](#)
- F137** S. 107(4)(a) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 19\(3\)](#)
- F138** S. 107(4)(e) omitted (1.4.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 16 para. 47](#); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2
- F139** S. 107(5) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 19\(4\)](#)
- F140** Words in s. 107(6) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 19\(5\)](#)

**Commencement Information**

- I68** S. 107 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

**<sup>F141</sup>108 Assistance with respect to employment and training**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F141** S. 108 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 20](#)

**<sup>F142</sup>109 Assistance with respect to employment and training: Northern Ireland**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F142** S. 109 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 20](#)

*F143*  
...

**Textual Amendments**

- F143** S. 110 and preceding crossheading omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 21](#)

**<sup>F143</sup>110 Research, information and advice**

.....

**<sup>F144</sup>111 Power to confer supplementary functions on Chief Executive**

.....

*Status:* Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F144** S. 111 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 22](#)

**CHAPTER 3**

**F145** ... SUPPLEMENTARY

**Textual Amendments**

**F145** Words in Pt. 4 Ch. 3 title omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 31\(d\)](#)

*Strategies*

**F146** **112 Strategies for functions of Chief Executive**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F146** Ss. 112-114 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 73\(3\)](#), 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F146** **113**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F146** Ss. 112-114 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 73\(3\)](#), 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F146** **114 Strategies: duty of Chief Executive**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F146** Ss. 112-114 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 73\(3\)](#), 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

*Other*

**115 Persons with <sup>F147</sup>special educational needs]**

- (1) The [<sup>F148</sup>Secretary of State] must, in performing [<sup>F149</sup>functions under this Part] , have regard to the needs of persons with [<sup>F150</sup>special educational needs] to whom this section applies.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) This section applies to—
  - (a) persons who are aged 19 or over, other than persons aged under 25 <sup>F151</sup> for whom an EHC plan is maintained ] , and
  - (b) persons who are subject to adult detention.

<sup>F152</sup>(3) .....

<sup>F153</sup>(4) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F147** Words in s. 115 title substituted (1.9.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 93(d)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)

**F148** Words in s. 115(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by Deregulation Act 2015 (c. 20), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 23(a)**

**F149** Words in s. 115(1) substituted (26.5.2015) by Deregulation Act 2015 (c. 20), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 23(b)**

**F150** Words in s. 115(1) substituted (1.9.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 93(a)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)

**F151** Words in s. 115(2)(a) substituted (1.9.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 93(b)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)

**F152** S. 115(3) omitted (1.9.2014) by virtue of Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 93(c)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)

**F153** S. 115(4) omitted (1.9.2014) by virtue of Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 93(c)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)

**Commencement Information**

**I69** S. 115 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

**116 Persons subject to adult detention**

The <sup>F154</sup>[Secretary of State] must, in performing <sup>F155</sup>[functions under this Part] , have regard to the needs of persons subject to adult detention.

**Textual Amendments**

**F154** Words in s. 116 substituted (26.5.2015) by Deregulation Act 2015 (c. 20), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 24(a)**

**F155** Words in s. 116 substituted (26.5.2015) by Deregulation Act 2015 (c. 20), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 24(b)**

**Commencement Information**

**I70** S. 116 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

<sup>F156</sup>**117 Use of information by Chief Executive**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F156** Ss. 117-120 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 25](#)

**<sup>F156</sup>118 Guidance**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F156** Ss. 117-120 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 25](#)

**<sup>F156</sup>118A Directions: consultation**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F156** Ss. 117-120 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 25](#)

**<sup>F156</sup>119 Directions: funding of qualifications**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F156** Ss. 117-120 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 25](#)

**<sup>F156</sup>120 Other directions relating to functions of the office**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F156** Ss. 117-120 omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 25](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER 4

### GENERAL

#### [<sup>F157</sup>120A] Territorial application of Part

The functions of the Secretary of State under this Part, other than the functions conferred by section 107, are exercisable in relation to England only.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F157** S. 120A inserted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 26](#)

#### 121 Interpretation of Part

(1) In this Part—

<sup>F158</sup>  
...

“apprenticeship training” has the meaning given by section 83;

[<sup>F159</sup>“approved English apprenticeship” has the meaning given by section A1(2);]

<sup>F160</sup>  
...

“organised leisure-time occupation” has the meaning given by section 86.

(2) In this Part a reference to education within [<sup>F161</sup>the Secretary of State's remit under this Part] is a reference to—

- (a) education falling within section 86(1)(a) or (b), and
- (b) organised leisure-time occupation in connection with such education.

(3) In this Part a reference to training within [<sup>F162</sup>the Secretary of State's remit under this Part] is a reference to—

- (a) training falling within section 83(1),
- [<sup>F163</sup>(aa) training falling within section 83A(1),]
- (b) training falling within section 86(1)(c), and
- (c) organised leisure-time occupation in connection with training falling within section 86(1)(c).

(4) For the purposes of this Part a person is subject to adult detention if the person is subject to a detention order and—

- (a) aged 19 or over, or
- (b) aged under 19 and detained in—
  - (i) a young offender institution, or part of such an institution, that is used wholly or mainly for the detention of persons aged 18 and over, or
  - (ii) a prison.

#### Textual Amendments

**F158** Words in s. 121(1) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 22\(a\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

**F159** Words in s. 121(1) inserted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(7), [Sch. 1 para. 22\(b\)](#); S.I. 2015/994, art. 6(a) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F160** Words in s. 121(1) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 27\(2\)](#)
- F161** Words in s. 121(2) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 27\(3\)](#)
- F162** Words in s. 121(3) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), [Sch. 14 para. 27\(3\)](#)
- F163** S. 121(3)(aa) inserted (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 12](#); [S.I. 2012/1087](#), art. 3

#### Commencement Information

- I71** S. 121 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

## PART 5

### PARTS 2 TO 4: SUPPLEMENTARY

#### Information

#### 122 Sharing of information for education and training purposes

- (1) A person within subsection (3) may provide information to another person within that subsection, or a person within subsection (4), for the purpose of enabling or facilitating the exercise of any relevant function.
- (2) A person within subsection (4) may provide information to a person within subsection (3) for the purpose of enabling or facilitating the exercise of any relevant function.
- (3) The persons within this subsection are—
  - <sup>F164</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) the [<sup>F165</sup>Secretary of State];
  - <sup>F166</sup>(c) .....
  - <sup>F167</sup>(d) .....
  - <sup>F168</sup>(e) .....
  - (f) a person providing services to [<sup>F169</sup>the Secretary of State]
  - <sup>F170</sup>(g) the IfA].
- (4) The persons within this subsection are—
  - (a) a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England;
  - (b) a person providing services to a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England [<sup>F171</sup>in connection with its education functions].
- (5) In subsections (1) and (2), “relevant function” means—
  - <sup>F172</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) any function of the [<sup>F173</sup>Secretary of State relating to education or training],  
<sup>F174</sup>...
  - <sup>F175</sup>(ba) any function of the IfA, or]
  - <sup>F176</sup>(c) any education function of a local authority in England,]  
other than a function under this section.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

F177(6) .....

(7) Nothing in this section—

- (a) affects any power to disclose information that exists apart from this section, or
- (b) authorises the disclosure of any information in contravention of any provision made by or under any Act which prevents disclosure of the information.

#### Textual Amendments

- F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**
- F164** S. 122(3)(a) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 28(a)**
- F165** Words in s. 122(3)(b) substituted (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), **Sch. 16 para. 48(2)**; [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2
- F166** S. 122(3)(c) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 28(a)**
- F167** S. 122(3)(d) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 28(a)**
- F168** S. 122(3)(e) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 28(a)**
- F169** Words in s. 122(3)(f) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 28(b)**
- F170** S. 122(3)(g) inserted (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), s. 44(5), **Sch. 4 para. 7(a)**; [S.I. 2017/346](#), reg. 2(a)
- F171** Words in s. 122(4)(b) substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(6)(a)**
- F172** S. 122(5)(a) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 28(c)**
- F173** Words in s. 122(5)(b) substituted (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), **Sch. 16 para. 48(3)**; [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2
- F174** Word in s. 122(5)(b) omitted (1.4.2017) by virtue of [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), s. 44(5), **Sch. 4 para. 7(b)(i)**; [S.I. 2017/346](#), reg. 2(a)
- F175** S. 122(5)(ba) inserted (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016 \(c. 12\)](#), s. 44(5), **Sch. 4 para. 7(b)(ii)**; [S.I. 2017/346](#), reg. 2(a)
- F176** S. 122(5)(c) substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(6)(b)**
- F177** S. 122(6) omitted (26.5.2015) by virtue of [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\)](#), s. 115(3)(g), **Sch. 14 para. 28(d)**

#### Commencement Information

- I72** S. 122 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

*The Learning and Skills Council for England*

## 123 Dissolution of the Learning and Skills Council for England

- (1) The Learning and Skills Council for England ceases to exist on the day on which this section comes into force.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) Schedule 6 contains minor and consequential amendments in relation to the dissolution of the Learning and Skills Council for England.

**Commencement Information**

**I73** S. 123 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [arts. 9-11, 13, 14](#)) (as amended (30.3.2010) by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 22](#))

**124 Dissolution of the Learning and Skills Council: transfer schemes**

Schedule 7 contains provision about schemes for the transfer of staff, property, rights and liabilities from the Learning and Skills Council for England to other persons.

**Commencement Information**

**I74** S. 124 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#))

**PART 6**

THE SIXTH FORM COLLEGE SECTOR

**125 Sixth form college sector**

Schedule 8 makes provision about the sixth form college sector.

**Commencement Information**

**I75** S. 125 in force at 12.1.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#)  
**I76** S. 125 in force at 1.4.2010 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#))

**126 Removal of power to establish sixth form schools**

- (1) In section 16 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (power to establish etc. primary and secondary schools) after subsection (3) insert—

“(3A) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England may not under subsection (1) establish a school which is principally concerned with the provision of full-time education suitable to the requirements of pupils who are over compulsory school age but under 19.”

- (2) The Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40) is amended as follows.

- (3) In section 7 (invitation for proposals for establishment of new schools) after subsection (5) insert—

“(5A) A [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] may not publish under this section proposals within subsection (5)(b) for the establishment of a school providing education suitable only to the requirements of persons above compulsory school age.”

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) In section 10 (publication of proposals with consent of Secretary of State) in subsection (1)(a) after “school” insert “, other than one providing education suitable only to the requirements of persons above compulsory school age”.
- (5) In section 11 (publication of proposals to establish maintained schools: special cases) omit subsections (1)(b) and (2)(a).

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**

---

**Commencement Information**

**I77** S. 126 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), art. 2, **Sch.**

**PART 7**

THE OFFICE OF QUALIFICATIONS AND EXAMINATIONS REGULATION

**CHAPTER 1**

ESTABLISHMENT, OBJECTIVES AND GENERAL DUTIES

*Establishment*

**127 The Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation**

- (1) There is to be a body corporate known as the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation.
- (2) In this Part that body is referred to as “Ofqual”.
- (3) Schedule 9 makes further provision about Ofqual.

---

**Commencement Information**

**I78** S. 127 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, **Sch. 1**

*Objectives and general duties*

**128 Objectives**

- (1) Ofqual's objectives are—
- (a) the qualifications standards objective,
  - (b) the assessments standards objective,
  - (c) the public confidence objective,
  - (d) the awareness objective, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) the efficiency objective.
- [<sup>F178</sup>(2) The qualifications standards objective is to secure that—
- (a) regulated qualifications give a reliable indication of knowledge, skills and understanding, and
  - (b) regulated qualifications indicate —
    - (i) a consistent level of attainment (including over time) between comparable regulated qualifications, and
    - (ii) a consistent level of attainment (but not over time) between regulated qualifications and comparable qualifications (including those awarded outside the United Kingdom) which are not qualifications to which this Part applies.]
- (3) The assessments standards objective is to promote the development and implementation of regulated assessment arrangements which—
- (a) give a reliable indication of achievement, and
  - (b) indicate a consistent level of attainment (including over time) between comparable assessments.
- (4) The public confidence objective is to promote public confidence in regulated qualifications and regulated assessment arrangements.
- (5) The awareness objective is to promote awareness and understanding of—
- (a) the range of regulated qualifications available,
  - (b) the benefits of regulated qualifications to learners, employers and institutions within the higher education sector, and
  - (c) the benefits of recognition under section 132 to bodies awarding or authenticating qualifications to which this Part applies.
- (6) The efficiency objective is to secure that regulated qualifications are provided efficiently and in particular that any relevant sums payable to a body awarding or authenticating a qualification in respect of which the body is recognised under section 132 represent value for money.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (6) a sum is relevant if it is payable in respect of the award or authentication of the qualification in question.

#### Textual Amendments

**F178** S. 128(2) substituted (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 22**, 82(3); [S.I. 2012/84](#), **art. 3**

#### Commencement Information

**I79** S. 128 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), **art. 2**, **Sch. 1**

## 129 General duties

- (1) So far as reasonably practicable, in performing its functions Ofqual must act in a way—
- (a) which is compatible with its objectives, and
  - (b) which it considers most appropriate for the purpose of meeting its objectives.
- (2) So far as relevant, in performing its functions Ofqual must have regard to—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the need to ensure that the number of regulated qualifications available for award or authentication is appropriate;
  - (b) the other reasonable requirements of relevant learners, including persons with <sup>F179</sup>special educational needs];
  - (c) the reasonable requirements of pupils and children, including persons with <sup>F180</sup>special educational needs], in relation to regulated assessment arrangements;
  - (d) the reasonable requirements of industry, commerce, finance, the professions and other employers regarding education and training (including required standards of practical competence);
  - (e) the reasonable requirements of institutions within the higher education sector;
  - (f) information provided to Ofqual by a person falling within subsection (4);
  - (g) the desirability of facilitating innovation in connection with the provision of regulated qualifications;
  - (h) the specified purposes of regulated assessment arrangements.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(a) the number of regulated qualifications available for award or authentication is appropriate if the number is such that—
- (a) there is a reasonable level of choice for learners, in terms of both the number of different regulated qualifications and the number of different forms of such qualifications, but
  - (b) the number of different regulated qualifications in similar subject areas or serving similar functions is not excessive.
- (4) The persons falling within this subsection are—
- <sup>F181</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills;
  - (c) such other relevant persons, or relevant persons of such a description, as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (5) In subsection (4)(c) “relevant person” means a person who appears to the Secretary of State to have knowledge of, or expertise in, requirements of a kind mentioned in subsection (2)(d).
- (6) In performing its functions Ofqual must also have regard to such aspects of government policy as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (7) The Secretary of State must publish a direction given under subsection (6).
- (8) Ofqual must perform its functions efficiently and effectively.
- <sup>F182</sup>(9) .....
- <sup>F183</sup>(10) .....
- (11) “Relevant learner” means a person seeking to obtain, or who may reasonably be expected to seek to obtain, a regulated qualification.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F179** Words in s. 129(2)(b) substituted (1.9.2014) by [Children and Families Act 2014 \(c. 6\)](#), s. 139(6), [Sch. 3 para. 94\(a\)](#); S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)



**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F180** Words in s. 129(2)(c) substituted (1.9.2014) by Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 94(a)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)
- F181** S. 129(4)(a) omitted (1.4.2012) by virtue of Education Act 2011 (c. 21), s. 82(3), **Sch. 8 para. 23**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2
- F182** S. 129(9) omitted (1.9.2014) by virtue of Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 94(b)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)
- F183** S. 129(10) omitted (1.9.2014) by virtue of Children and Families Act 2014 (c. 6), s. 139(6), **Sch. 3 para. 94(b)**; S.I. 2014/889, art. 7(a)

#### Commencement Information

- I80** S. 129 in force at 1.4.2010 by S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, **Sch. 1**

### *Regulated qualifications and regulated assessment arrangements*

#### **130 Meaning of “regulated qualifications” etc.**

- (1) In this Part a “regulated qualification” means a qualification to which this Part applies which is awarded or authenticated by a body which is recognised under section 132 in respect of the qualification.
- (2) This Part applies to any of the following qualifications which is not an excluded qualification—
  - (a) an academic or vocational qualification awarded or authenticated in England;
  - F184**(b) .....
- (3) An excluded qualification is any of the following—
  - (a) a foundation degree;
  - (b) a first degree;
  - (c) a degree at a higher level.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (2) a qualification is awarded or authenticated in England **F185** ... if there are, or may reasonably be expected to be, persons seeking to obtain the qualification who are, will be or may reasonably be expected to be assessed for those purposes wholly or mainly in England **F185** ....
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order repeal subsection (2)(b).
- (6) An order under subsection (5) may make amendments and repeals to a provision of, or in an instrument made under, this or any other Act (including any Act passed after this Act) in consequence of the repeal of subsection (2)(b).
- (7) Before making an order under subsection (5) the Secretary of State must consult the Department for Employment and Learning in Northern Ireland.

#### Textual Amendments

- F184** S. 130(2)(b) omitted (14.6.2016) by virtue of The Education (Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/642), arts. 1, 2
- F185** Words in s. 130(4) repealed (14.6.2016) by The Education (Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland) Order 2016 (S.I. 2016/642), art. 1, **Sch. Table 1**

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Commencement Information**

**181** S. 130 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

**131 Meaning of “regulated assessment arrangements” etc.**

- (1) This section applies for the purposes of this Part.
- (2) “Regulated assessment arrangements” means—
  - (a) NC assessment arrangements, and
  - (b) EYFS assessment arrangements.
- (3) “NC assessment arrangements” means arrangements made under or by virtue of an order made under section 87(3)(c) of the Education Act 2002 (c. 32) for assessing pupils in England in respect of each key stage for the specified purposes.
- (4) In subsection (3)—
 

“assessing” includes testing;

“key stage” has the same meaning as in Part 6 of the Education Act 2002 (c. 32) (see section 76 of that Act).
- (5) “EYFS assessment arrangements” means arrangements made under or by virtue of an order made under section 39(1)(a) of the Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21) for assessing children in England for the specified purposes.
- (6) “The specified purposes” in relation to regulated assessment arrangements—
  - (a) if the arrangements are NC assessment arrangements, has the same meaning as in section 76(1) of the Education Act 2002;
  - (b) if the arrangements are EYFS assessment arrangements, has the same meaning as in section 41(2)(c) of the Childcare Act 2006.

**Commencement Information**

**182** S. 131 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

**CHAPTER 2**

FUNCTIONS IN RELATION TO QUALIFICATIONS

*Recognition of awarding bodies*

**132 Recognition**

- (1) Ofqual must recognise an awarding body in respect of the award or authentication of a specified qualification, or description of qualification, to which this Part applies if—
  - (a) the awarding body has applied for recognition in the respect in question, and
  - (b) the body meets the applicable criteria for recognition most recently published under section 133.
- (2) Ofqual may not recognise an awarding body if the requirements set out in paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (1) are not met by the body.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) A recognition—
  - (a) has effect from such date as Ofqual may specify,
  - (b) is subject to the general conditions,
  - (c) if in respect of a qualification subject to the accreditation requirement, is subject to an accreditation condition, and
  - (d) is subject to such other conditions that Ofqual may impose at the time of recognition or later.
- (4) But Ofqual may, at the time of recognition or later, determine that a specified recognition is not to be subject to a specified general condition.
- (5) An accreditation condition in respect of a qualification subject to the accreditation requirement is a condition requiring that the recognised body may award or authenticate a particular form of the qualification only if, at the time of the award or authentication, that form of the qualification is accredited under section 139.
- (6) Ofqual may not charge an awarding body in respect of recognition.
- (7) If Ofqual refuses an application for recognition it must provide the awarding body with a statement setting out the reasons for its decision.
- (8) In this section “the general conditions”, in respect of a recognition of an awarding body, means the general conditions for the time being in force under section 134 which are applicable to the recognition and the body.
- (9) In this Chapter—
  - “awarding body” means a person who awards or authenticates, or who proposes to award or authenticate, a qualification to which this Part applies;
  - “recognised body” means an awarding body recognised under this section;
  - a “recognition” means a recognition under this section.

[<sup>F186</sup>(10) See section 35 of the Qualifications Wales Act 2015 for provision about the effect of conditions imposed by or under this section, in respect of or for the purposes of the award in Wales by an awarding body of a form of a qualification awarded as an approved qualification (for which see section 22(4) of that Act).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F186** S. 132(10) inserted (E.W.) (21.9.2015) by [Qualifications Wales Act 2015 \(anaw 5\)](#), **ss. 35(2), 60(2)**; [S.I. 2015/1687, art. 2](#) (with arts. 3-12)

#### Commencement Information

**I83** S. 132 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1](#)

### 133 Criteria for recognition

- (1) Ofqual must set and publish the criteria for recognition under section 132.
- (2) Different criteria may be set for—
  - (a) recognition of different descriptions of awarding bodies;
  - (b) recognition in respect of different qualifications or different descriptions of qualifications;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) recognition in respect of credits in respect of different components of qualifications or different descriptions of components of qualifications.
- (3) Ofqual may revise the criteria.
- (4) If Ofqual revises the criteria it must publish them as revised.
- (5) Before setting or revising the criteria Ofqual must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.

---

**Commencement Information**

**I84** S. 133 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**134 General conditions of recognition**

- (1) Ofqual must set and publish the general conditions to which a recognition is to be subject.
- (2) Different general conditions may be set for—
  - (a) recognition of different descriptions of awarding bodies;
  - (b) recognition in respect of different qualifications or different descriptions of qualifications;
  - (c) recognition in respect of credits in respect of different components of qualifications or different descriptions of components of qualifications.
- (3) Ofqual may revise the general conditions.
- (4) If Ofqual revises the general conditions it must publish them as revised.
- (5) Before setting or revising the general conditions Ofqual must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.

---

**Commencement Information**

**I85** S. 134 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**135 Other conditions of recognition**

- (1) The conditions of recognition that Ofqual may impose under section 132(3)(d) include in particular—
  - (a) fee capping conditions;
  - (b) entry and inspection conditions.
- (2) Fee capping conditions are conditions limiting the amount of a fee chargeable by a recognised body for—
  - (a) the award or authentication of a qualification in respect of which the body is recognised, or
  - (b) the provision of any other service in relation to such a qualification.
- (3) Entry and inspection conditions are conditions requiring permission to enter premises for the purposes of inspecting and copying documents so far as necessary for Ofqual—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) to satisfy itself that the appropriate standards are being maintained by a recognised body in relation to the award or authentication of any qualification in respect of which the body is recognised, or
- (b) to determine whether to impose a fee capping condition and, if so, what that condition should be.

#### Commencement Information

**I86** S. 135 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

### 136 Fee capping conditions: supplementary

- (1) Ofqual may impose a fee capping condition limiting the amount of a particular fee only if satisfied that the limit is necessary in order to secure value for money.
- (2) Before imposing a fee capping condition in respect of a recognition Ofqual must give notice to the recognised body of its intention to do so.
- (3) The notice must—
  - (a) set out Ofqual's reasons for proposing to impose the fee capping condition, and
  - (b) specify the period during which, and the way in which, the recognised body may make representations about the proposal.
- (4) Ofqual must have regard to any representations made by the recognised body during the period specified in the notice in deciding whether to impose the fee capping condition.
- (5) Ofqual must establish arrangements (the “review arrangements”) for the review, at the request of a recognised body, of a decision to impose a fee capping condition.
- (6) The review arrangements must require the decision on review to be made by a person within subsection (7).
- (7) A person within this subsection is one who—
  - (a) appears to Ofqual to have skills likely to be relevant to decisions to impose fee capping conditions, and
  - (b) is independent of Ofqual.
- (8) A person is independent of Ofqual for the purposes of subsection (7) if the person is—
  - (a) an individual who is not a member of Ofqual or Ofqual's staff, or
  - (b) a body none of whose members is a member of Ofqual or Ofqual's staff.
- (9) A decision to impose a fee capping condition must not take effect before the later of—
  - (a) the expiry of the period during which a review can be requested under the review arrangements, and
  - (b) the completion of any review requested under those arrangements.
- (10) Ofqual must, in performing its functions in relation to fee capping conditions, have regard to any guidance given by the Secretary of State.
- (11) The Secretary of State must publish any guidance given under subsection (10).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Commencement Information**

**I87** S. 136 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**137 Entry and inspection conditions: supplementary**

- (1) An entry and inspection condition requires permission to enter premises to be given only if—
  - (a) the premises in question are not used as a private dwelling,
  - (b) the entry is to be by an authorised person,
  - (c) reasonable notice has been given to the recognised body in question, and
  - (d) the entry is to be at a reasonable time.
- (2) “Authorised person” means a member of Ofqual's staff who is authorised (generally or specifically) for the purpose.
- (3) An entry and inspection condition may require an authorised person to be given permission to do anything that a person authorised by a provision of Part 1 of the Education Act 2005 (c. 18) to inspect documents could do by virtue of section 58 of that Act (computer records).

**Commencement Information**

**I88** S. 137 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

*Accreditation of certain qualifications*

**138 Qualifications subject to the accreditation requirement**

- (1) Ofqual may determine that a specified qualification, or description of qualification, to which this Part applies is subject to the accreditation requirement.
- (2) A determination under subsection (1) may provide that a qualification or description of qualification is subject to the accreditation requirement—
  - (a) for all purposes, or
  - (b) for the purposes of award or authentication by a specified awarding body.
- (3) Ofqual must publish a determination falling within subsection (2)(a).
- (4) Ofqual may revise a determination made under subsection (1).
- (5) If Ofqual revises a determination falling within subsection (2)(a) it must publish the determination as revised.
- (6) Before making or revising a determination under subsection (1) Ofqual must—
  - (a) if the determination falls within subsection (2)(a), consult such persons as it considers appropriate, and
  - (b) if the determination falls within subsection (2)(b), consult the awarding body in question.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Commencement Information**

**189** S. 138 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

### **139 Accreditation**

- (1) Where a qualification is subject to the accreditation requirement Ofqual must accredit a particular form of the qualification if—
  - (a) that form of the qualification has been submitted for accreditation by a recognised body which is recognised in respect of the qualification, and
  - (b) that form of the qualification meets the applicable criteria for accreditation most recently published under section 140.
- (2) Ofqual may not accredit a form of a qualification if the requirements set out in paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection (1) are not met in respect of that form of the qualification.
- (3) An accreditation under this section has effect from such date as Ofqual may specify.
- (4) Ofqual may not charge a recognised body in respect of accreditation under this section.
- (5) If Ofqual refuses an application for accreditation it must provide the recognised body with a statement setting out the reasons for its decision.

#### **Commencement Information**

**190** S. 139 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

### **140 Criteria for accreditation**

- (1) Ofqual must set and publish the criteria for accreditation under section 139.
- (2) Different criteria may be set for the accreditation of different qualifications or different descriptions of qualifications.
- (3) Ofqual may revise the criteria.
- (4) If Ofqual revises the criteria it must publish them as revised.
- (5) Before setting or revising the criteria Ofqual must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.
- (6) If Ofqual revises the criteria under this section which are applicable to a form of a qualification which is accredited under section 139, the accreditation ceases to have effect on the date specified by Ofqual.
- (7) Ofqual may vary the date specified under subsection (6) at any time before the date.
- (8) Ofqual may determine that subsection (6) does not apply in relation to a specified revision.
- (9) Ofqual must publish a determination made under subsection (8).

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (10) Ofqual may make saving or transitional provision in connection with the accreditation of a form of a qualification ceasing to have effect under subsection (6).

**Commencement Information**

**I91** S. 140 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

*Minimum requirements*

**141 Power to specify minimum requirements**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order specify minimum requirements in respect of a specified qualification, or description of qualification, to which this section applies.
- (2) But the Secretary of State may make an order under subsection (1) only if satisfied that it is necessary to do so for the purpose of ensuring that the curriculum studied by persons taking a course leading to the qualification, or a qualification of the description, is appropriate, having regard to the likely ages of those persons.
- (3) This section applies to a qualification, or description of qualification, if—
  - (a) the qualification, or each qualification of the description, is one to which this Part applies, and
  - (b) the condition in subsection (4) is met in relation to the qualification or each qualification of the description.
- (4) The condition is that—
  - (a) one or more forms of the qualification is (or are) approved under section 98 of the Learning and Skills Act 2000 (c. 21), or
  - (b) the Secretary of State reasonably expects approval under that section to be sought for one or more forms of the qualification.
- (5) A minimum requirement in respect of a qualification or description of qualification is a requirement which relates to the knowledge, skills or understanding which a person must demonstrate in order to obtain the qualification or a qualification of the description.

**Commencement Information**

**I92** S. 141 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**142 Consultation before making order specifying minimum requirements**

- (1) Before making an order under section 141(1) the Secretary of State must consult Ofqual and such other persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (2) For the purposes of consulting under subsection (1) the Secretary of State must publish a document setting out—
  - (a) the grounds on which the Secretary of State is satisfied of the matter specified in section 141(2),
  - (b) the proposed minimum requirements, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) the Secretary of State's reasons for proposing those minimum requirements.
- (3) The Secretary of State must provide a copy of the document to Ofqual and any other persons the Secretary of State proposes to consult under subsection (1).

**Commencement Information**

**I93** S. 142 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**143 Effect of order specifying minimum requirements**

- (1) This section applies in relation to a qualification or description of qualification in respect of which minimum requirements specified in an order under section 141(1) have effect.
- (2) Ofqual must perform its functions under sections 133, 134 and 140 in relation to the qualification or description of qualification in a way which secures that the minimum requirements in respect of the qualification or description of qualification are met.
- (3) But Ofqual is not required to comply with the duty imposed by subsection (2) if it appears to Ofqual that complying with that duty would result in the level of attainment (in terms of depth of knowledge, skills or understanding) indicated by the qualification or description of qualification not being consistent with that indicated by comparable regulated qualifications.

**Commencement Information**

**I94** S. 143 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**144 Revocation and amendment of orders specifying minimum requirements**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if—
  - (a) the Secretary of State has made an order under section 141(1) in respect of a qualification or description of qualification, and
  - (b) the qualification or description of qualification ceases to be one to which section 141 applies.
- (2) The Secretary of State may by order—
  - (a) revoke the order, or
  - (b) amend it for the purpose of removing the qualification or description of qualification from the application of the order.
- (3) Subsections (1) and (2) do not affect the power of the Secretary of State to revoke or amend an order under section 141(1) in other circumstances.
- (4) Sections 141(2) and 142 do not apply to an order—
  - (a) revoking an order under section 141(1), or
  - (b) amending an order under section 141(1) for the purpose only of removing a qualification or description of qualification from the application of the order.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Commencement Information**

**I95** S. 144 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

*Guided learning*

**145 Assignment of number of hours of guided learning**

- (1) A recognised body may only award or authenticate a particular form of a qualification in respect of which it is recognised if Condition 1 or 2 is met.
- (2) Condition 1 is met if the recognised body determines that the qualification is not relevant for 2008 Act purposes.
- (3) Condition 2 is met if—
  - (a) the recognised body determines that the qualification is relevant for 2008 Act purposes, and
  - (b) the body assigns to the particular form of the qualification a number of hours of guided learning.
- <sup>F187</sup>(4) .....
- (5) A recognised body must apply the applicable criteria then in force under section 146 when determining—
  - (a) whether or not a qualification is relevant for 2008 Act purposes, and
  - (b) in respect of a qualification which the body has determined is relevant for those purposes, a number of hours of guided learning to assign to a form of the qualification.
- (6) If revised criteria come into force under section 146, a recognised body must review any determination it has made under this section.
- (7) Ofqual may—
  - (a) review any determination made by a recognised body under this section, and
  - (b) require the recognised body to revise any such determination in such respects as Ofqual may specify.
- (8) If under subsection (7)(b) Ofqual requires a recognised body to revise a determination that a qualification is not relevant for 2008 Act purposes by specifying that the determination should provide that the qualification is so relevant—
  - (a) Ofqual may assign to a form of the qualification awarded or authenticated by the recognised body a number of hours of guided learning, and
  - (b) if it does so, the recognised body is to be treated as having determined to assign that number of hours of guided learning to that form of the qualification.
- (9) For the purposes of this Chapter a qualification is relevant for 2008 Act purposes if there are, or may reasonably be expected to be, persons seeking to obtain the qualification for the purposes of discharging the duty under section 2(1)(c) of the Education and Skills Act 2008 (c. 25) (duty to participate in education or training).
- (10) In this Chapter a “number of hours of guided learning”, in relation to a form of a qualification, means a number of notional hours representing an estimate of the amount

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

of actual guided learning which could reasonably be expected to be required in order for persons to achieve the standard required to obtain that form of the qualification.

- (11) In subsection (10) “actual guided learning” means time a person spends—
- (a) being taught or given instruction by a lecturer, tutor, supervisor or other appropriate provider of education or training, or
  - (b) otherwise participating in education or training under the immediate guidance or supervision of such a person,

but does not include time spent on unsupervised preparation or study, whether at home or otherwise.

- (12) Section 172(2)(a) does not apply for the purposes of this section.

#### Textual Amendments

**F187** S. 145(4) repealed (14.6.2016) by [The Education \(Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/642\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. Table 1](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I96** S. 145 in force at 31.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/975](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#)

### 146 Criteria for assignment of number of hours of guided learning

- (1) Ofqual must set and publish criteria for determining—
- (a) whether a qualification is relevant for 2008 Act purposes, and
  - (b) in respect of a qualification which a recognised body has determined is relevant for those purposes, the number of hours of guided learning that should be assigned to a form of the qualification.
- (2) Different criteria may be set for determinations in relation to different qualifications or different descriptions of qualifications.
- (3) Ofqual may revise the criteria.
- (4) If Ofqual revises the criteria it must publish them as revised.
- (5) Before setting or revising the criteria Ofqual must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.

#### Commencement Information

**I97** S. 146 in force at 31.5.2013 by [S.I. 2013/975](#), [art. 2\(a\)](#) (with [art. 3](#))

*Surrender*

### 147 Surrender of recognition

- (1) A recognised body may give notice to Ofqual that it wishes to cease to be recognised in respect of the award or authentication of a specified qualification or description of qualification.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) As soon as reasonably practicable after receipt of a notice under subsection (1) Ofqual must give notice to the recognised body of the date on which the body is to cease to be recognised in the respect in question (“the surrender date”).
- (3) At any time before the surrender date Ofqual may vary that date by giving further notice to the recognised body.
- (4) In deciding or varying the surrender date Ofqual must have regard to the need to avoid prejudicing persons who are seeking, or might reasonably be expected to seek, to obtain the qualification, or a qualification of the description, specified in the notice under subsection (1).
- (5) Ofqual may make saving or transitional provision in connection with a recognised body ceasing to be recognised in any respect by virtue of this section.

---

**Commencement Information**

**I98** S. 147 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

*Register*

**148 Register**

- (1) Ofqual must maintain and publish a register containing the following information in relation to each recognised body—
  - (a) the qualifications in respect of which it is recognised,
  - (b) the forms of those qualifications which are awarded or authenticated by it, and
  - (c) if the recognised body has determined under section 145 that any of those qualifications is relevant for 2008 Act purposes, the number of hours of guided learning it has assigned to each form of the qualification awarded or authenticated by it.
- (2) The register may include such other information as Ofqual considers appropriate.

---

**Commencement Information**

**I99** S. 148(1)(a)(b)(2) in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

*Recognised bodies: monitoring and enforcement*

**149 Review of activities of recognised bodies**

- (1) Ofqual may keep under review any connected activities of a recognised body.
- (2) An activity of a recognised body is a connected activity if Ofqual considers that it is connected or otherwise relevant to—
  - (a) the body's recognition (including, in particular, the compliance by the body with the conditions to which the recognition is subject), or
  - (b) the award or authentication by the body of any qualification in respect of which it is recognised.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I100** S. 149 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

### 150 Investigation of complaints

- (1) Ofqual may investigate, or make arrangements for the investigation of, complaints in relation to the award or authentication of a regulated qualification.
- (2) Arrangements made under subsection (1) may in particular include arrangements for the referral of complaints to an independent party.
- (3) “An independent party” means—
  - (a) an individual who is not a member of Ofqual or Ofqual's staff, or
  - (b) a body none of whose members is a member of Ofqual or Ofqual's staff.

#### Commencement Information

**I101** S. 150 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

### 151 Power to give directions

- [<sup>F188</sup>(1) Subsection (2) applies if it appears to Ofqual that a recognised body has failed or is likely to fail to comply with a condition to which the recognition is subject.]
- (2) Ofqual may direct the recognised body to take or refrain from taking specified steps with a view to securing compliance with the condition.
  - (3) Before giving a recognised body a direction under this section Ofqual must give notice to the body of its intention to do so.
  - (4) The notice must—
    - (a) set out Ofqual's reasons for proposing to give the direction, and
    - (b) specify the period during which, and the way in which, the recognised body may make representations about the proposal.
  - (5) Ofqual must have regard to any representations made by the recognised body during the period specified in the notice in deciding whether to give a direction to the body.
  - (6) A recognised body must comply with a direction given to it under this section.
  - (7) A direction under this section is enforceable, on the application of Ofqual—
    - (a) in England and Wales, by a mandatory order,<sup>F189</sup> ...
    - <sup>F189</sup>(b) .....
  - (8) A direction given under this section may be amended or revoked by Ofqual; and subsections (3) to (5) apply to the amendment of a direction as they apply to the giving of a direction.

#### Textual Amendments

**F188** S. 151(1) substituted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 23\(2\)](#), [82\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F189** S. 151(7)(b) and preceding word repealed (14.6.2016) by [The Education \(Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/642\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. Table 1](#)

**Commencement Information**

**I102** S. 151 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**[<sup>F190</sup>151A] Power to impose monetary penalties**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if it appears to Ofqual that a recognised body has failed to comply with a condition to which the recognition is subject.
- (2) Ofqual may impose a monetary penalty on the recognised body.
- (3) A “monetary penalty” is a requirement to pay to Ofqual a penalty of an amount determined by Ofqual in accordance with section 151B.
- (4) Before imposing a monetary penalty on a recognised body, Ofqual must give notice to the body of its intention to do so.
- (5) The notice must—
  - (a) set out Ofqual's reasons for proposing to impose the penalty, and
  - (b) specify the period during which, and the way in which, the recognised body may make representations about the proposal.
- (6) The period specified under subsection (5)(b) must not be less than 28 days beginning with the date on which the notice is received.
- (7) Ofqual must have regard to any representations made by the recognised body during the period specified in the notice in deciding whether to impose a monetary penalty on the body.
- (8) If Ofqual decides to impose a monetary penalty on the body, it must give the body a notice containing information as to—
  - (a) the grounds for imposing the penalty,
  - (b) how payment may be made,
  - (c) the period within which payment is required to be made (which must not be less than 28 days),
  - (d) rights of appeal,
  - (e) the period within which an appeal may be made, and
  - (f) the consequences of non-payment.

**Textual Amendments**

**F190** Ss. 151A-151D inserted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 23\(3\)](#), 82(3); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 3

**151B Monetary penalties: amount**

- (1) The amount of a monetary penalty imposed on a recognised body under section 151A must not exceed 10% of the body's turnover.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The turnover of a body for the purposes of subsection (1) is to be determined in accordance with an order made by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Subject to subsection (1), the amount may be whatever Ofqual decides is appropriate in all the circumstances of the case.

#### Textual Amendments

**F190** Ss. 151A-151D inserted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 3

### 151C Monetary penalties: appeals

- (1) A recognised body may appeal to the First-tier Tribunal against—
  - (a) a decision to impose a monetary penalty on the body under section 151A;
  - (b) a decision as to the amount of the penalty.
- (2) An appeal under this section may be made on the grounds—
  - (a) that the decision was based on an error of fact;
  - (b) that the decision was wrong in law;
  - (c) that the decision was unreasonable.
- (3) The requirement to pay the penalty is suspended pending the determination of an appeal under this section.
- (4) On an appeal under this section the Tribunal may—
  - (a) withdraw the requirement to pay the penalty;
  - (b) confirm that requirement;
  - (c) vary that requirement;
  - (d) take such steps as Ofqual could take in relation to the failure to comply giving rise to the decision to impose the requirement;
  - (e) remit the decision whether to confirm the requirement to pay the penalty, or any matter relating to that decision, to Ofqual.

#### Textual Amendments

**F190** Ss. 151A-151D inserted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 3

### 151D Monetary penalties: interest and recovery

- (1) This section applies if all or part of a monetary penalty imposed on a recognised body is unpaid at the end of the period ending on the applicable date.
- (2) The applicable date is—
  - (a) the last date on which the recognised body may make an appeal under section 151C in respect of the penalty, if no such appeal is made;
  - (b) if an appeal under section 151C in respect of the penalty is made—
    - (i) the date on which the appeal is determined, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (ii) if the appeal is withdrawn before being determined, the date on which the appeal is withdrawn.
- (3) The unpaid amount of the penalty for the time being carries interest at the rate for the time being specified in section 17 of the Judgments Act 1838 (and does not also carry interest as a judgment debt under that section).
- (4) The total amount of interest imposed under subsection (3) must not exceed the amount of the penalty.
- (5) Ofqual may recover from the body, as a civil debt due to it, the unpaid amount of the penalty and any unpaid interest.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F190** Ss. 151A-151D inserted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(3)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 3

## **152 Power to withdraw recognition**

- (1) Subsection (2) applies if a recognised body has failed to comply with a condition to which the recognition is subject.
- [<sup>F191</sup>(2) Ofqual may withdraw recognition from the recognised body in respect of the award or authentication of—
  - (a) a specified qualification or description of qualification in respect of which the body is recognised, or
  - (b) every qualification or description of qualification in respect of which the body is recognised.]
- (3) Before withdrawing recognition from a recognised body in any respect Ofqual must give notice to the body of its intention to do so.
- (4) The notice must—
  - (a) set out Ofqual's reasons for proposing to withdraw recognition from the recognised body in the respect in question, and
  - (b) specify the period during which, and the way in which, the recognised body may make representations about the proposal.
- (5) Ofqual must have regard to any representations made by the recognised body during the period specified in the notice in deciding whether to withdraw recognition from the body in the respect in question.
- (6) If Ofqual decides to withdraw recognition from a recognised body Ofqual—
  - (a) must give notice to the body of its decision and of the date on which the withdrawal is to take effect, and
  - (b) may make saving or transitional provision.
- (7) At any time before a withdrawal takes effect Ofqual may vary the date on which it is to take effect by giving further notice to the recognised body.
- (8) Ofqual must establish arrangements for the review, at the request of a recognised body, of a decision to withdraw recognition under this section.



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) The arrangements established under subsection (8) must require the decision on review to be made by a person who is independent of Ofqual.
- (10) A person is independent of Ofqual for the purposes of subsection (9) if the person is—
- an individual who is not a member of Ofqual or Ofqual's staff, or
  - a body none of whose members is a member of Ofqual or Ofqual's staff.

#### Textual Amendments

**F191** S. 152(2) substituted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\), ss. 23\(4\), 82\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924, art. 3](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I103** S. 152 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1](#)

### [<sup>F192</sup>152A] Costs recovery

- (1) Ofqual may, by notice, require a recognised body on which a sanction has been imposed to pay the costs incurred by Ofqual in relation to imposing the sanction, up to the time it is imposed.
- (2) The references in subsection (1) to imposing a sanction are to—
- giving a direction under section 151;
  - imposing a monetary penalty under section 151A;
  - withdrawing recognition under section 152.
- (3) “Costs” includes in particular—
- investigation costs;
  - administration costs;
  - costs of obtaining expert advice (including legal advice).
- (4) A notice given to a recognised body under subsection (1) must contain information as to—
- the amount required to be paid,
  - how payment may be made,
  - the period within which payment is required to be made (which must not be less than 28 days),
  - rights of appeal,
  - the period within which an appeal may be made, and
  - the consequences of non-payment.
- (5) The body may require Ofqual to provide a detailed breakdown of the amount specified in the notice.

#### Textual Amendments

**F192** Ss. 152A-152C inserted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\), ss. 23\(5\), 82\(3\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924, art. 3](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **152B Costs recovery: appeals**

- (1) A recognised body may appeal to the First-tier Tribunal against—
  - (a) a decision under section 152A(1) to require the body to pay costs;
  - (b) a decision as to the amount of those costs.
- (2) An appeal under this section may be made on the grounds—
  - (a) that the decision was based on an error of fact;
  - (b) that the decision was wrong in law;
  - (c) that the decision was unreasonable.
- (3) The requirement to pay the costs is suspended pending the determination of an appeal under this section.
- (4) On an appeal under this section the Tribunal may—
  - (a) withdraw the requirement to pay the costs;
  - (b) confirm that requirement;
  - (c) vary that requirement;
  - (d) take such steps as Ofqual could take in relation to the failure to comply giving rise to the decision to impose the requirement;
  - (e) remit the decision whether to confirm the requirement to pay the costs, or any matter relating to that decision, to Ofqual.

### **Textual Amendments**

**F192** Ss. 152A-152C inserted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(5)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 3

## **152C Costs: interest and recovery**

- (1) This section applies if all or part of an amount of costs that a recognised body is required to pay under section 152A(1) is unpaid at the end of the period ending on the applicable date.
- (2) The applicable date is—
  - (a) the last date on which the recognised body may make an appeal under section 152B in respect of the costs, if no such appeal is made;
  - (b) if an appeal under section 152B in respect of the costs is made—
    - (i) the date on which the appeal is determined, or
    - (ii) if the appeal is withdrawn before being determined, the date on which the appeal is withdrawn.
- (3) The unpaid amount of the costs for the time being carries interest at the rate for the time being specified in section 17 of the Judgments Act 1838 (and does not also carry interest as a judgment debt under that section).
- (4) The total amount of interest imposed under subsection (3) must not exceed the amount of the costs.
- (5) Ofqual may recover from the body, as a civil debt due to it, the unpaid amount of the costs and any unpaid interest.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F192** Ss. 152A-152C inserted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(5)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 3

## 153 Qualifications regulatory framework

- (1) Ofqual must prepare and publish—
  - (a) a statement of how Ofqual intends to perform the monitoring and enforcement functions, and
  - (b) guidance to recognised bodies in relation to the award and authentication of qualifications in respect of which they are recognised.
- (2) The statement and guidance mentioned in subsection (1) are together referred to in this section as “the qualifications regulatory framework”.
- (3) Guidance under subsection (1)(b) must include guidance for the purpose of helping to determine whether or not behaviour complies with the general conditions to which a recognition is subject (see section 134).
- (4) The guidance may in particular specify—
  - (a) descriptions of behaviour which Ofqual considers complies with a general condition;
  - (b) descriptions of behaviour which Ofqual considers does not comply with a general condition;
  - (c) factors which Ofqual will take into account in determining whether or not a recognised body's behaviour complies with a general condition.
- (5) Ofqual—
  - (a) may revise the qualifications regulatory framework, and
  - (b) if it does so, must publish the revised version.
- (6) Before publishing the qualifications regulatory framework or a revised version of it, Ofqual must consult such persons as it considers appropriate.
- (7) A recognised body must have regard to guidance under subsection (1)(b) in awarding or authenticating a qualification in respect of which it is recognised.
- (8) In subsection (1) “the monitoring and enforcement functions” means—
  - (a) Ofqual's power under section 132(3)(d) (power to impose other conditions);
  - (b) Ofqual's functions under sections 132(4) and 134 (functions in relation to general conditions);
  - (c) Ofqual's functions under an entry and inspection condition to which a recognition is subject (see section 135);
  - (d) Ofqual's functions under section 138(1) (power to determine that a qualification is subject to the accreditation requirement);
  - (e) Ofqual's functions under sections 149 to <sup>F193</sup>152C .

### Textual Amendments

**F193** Word in s. 153(8)(e) substituted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(6)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Commencement Information**

**I104** S. 153 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

*Other*

**154 Review of qualifications to which Part applies**

Ofqual may keep under review all aspects of qualifications to which this Part applies.

**Commencement Information**

**I105** S. 154 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

PROSPECTIVE

**155 Review of system for allocating values to qualifications**

- (1) Ofqual must keep under review any system used by the Secretary of State for allocating values to qualifications to which this Part applies by reference to the level of attainment indicated by the qualifications.
- (2) The duty in subsection (1) applies only if the values are to be allocated for the purpose of a qualifications-based performance management system.
- (3) A qualifications-based performance management system is a system for measuring the relative performance of schools by reference to the performance of pupils at the schools in qualifications to which this Part applies.
- (4) Ofqual may at any time require the Secretary of State to provide it with any information which Ofqual considers it necessary or expedient to have for the purposes of, or in connection with, the performance by Ofqual of its duty under subsection (1).

**156 Co-operation and joint working**

- (1) Ofqual may co-operate or work jointly with another public authority where it is appropriate to do so for the efficient and effective performance of any of Ofqual's qualifications functions.
- (2) “Public authority” includes any person who performs functions (whether or not in the United Kingdom) which are of a public nature.
- (3) In this Chapter “qualifications functions” means functions in connection with qualifications to which this Part applies.

**Commencement Information**

**I106** S. 156 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 157 Power to provide information to qualifications regulators

- (1) Ofqual may provide information to a qualifications regulator for the purpose of enabling or facilitating the performance of a relevant function of the regulator.
- (2) For the purposes of this section—
  - (a) a qualifications regulator is a person who has functions in any part of the United Kingdom which are similar to Ofqual's qualifications functions, and
  - (b) a function of a qualifications regulator is a relevant function if it is similar to any of the qualifications functions of Ofqual.
- (3) Nothing in this section—
  - (a) affects any power to disclose information that exists apart from this section, or
  - (b) authorises the disclosure of information in contravention of any provision made by or under any Act which prevents disclosure of the information.

### Commencement Information

**I107** S. 157 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

## General

## 158 Interpretation of Chapter

- (1) In this Chapter—
  - “awarding body” has the meaning given by section 132;
  - “entry and inspection condition” has the meaning given by section 135;
  - “fee capping condition” has the meaning given by section 135;
  - F194**  
...
  - “number of hours of guided learning”, in relation to a form of a qualification, has the meaning given by section 145;
  - “qualifications functions” has the meaning given by section 156;
  - “recognised body” has the meaning given by section 132;
  - a “recognition” has the meaning given by section 132.
- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter a qualification is subject to the accreditation requirement if a determination by Ofqual that the qualification, or a description of qualification which applies to the qualification, is to be subject to that requirement has effect under section 138.
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter a qualification is relevant for 2008 Act purposes if it falls within section 145(9).

### Textual Amendments

**F194** Words in s. 158(1) repealed (14.6.2016) by [The Education \(Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/642\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. Table 1](#)

### Commencement Information

**I108** S. 158(1) in force at 1.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**I109** S. 158(2) in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1](#)

### CHAPTER 3

#### FUNCTIONS IN RELATION TO ASSESSMENT ARRANGEMENTS

##### *Development etc. of regulated assessment arrangements*

**159 NC assessment arrangements: duty to consult Ofqual etc.**

(1) Section 87 of the Education Act 2002 (c. 32) (establishment of the National Curriculum for England by order) is amended as follows.

(2) Before subsection (7) insert—

“(6A) Before making an order under subsection (3)(c) the Secretary of State—

- (a) shall consult the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation, and
- (b) may consult such other persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.”

(3) After subsection (8) insert—

“(8A) An order under subsection (3)(c) which includes provision made by virtue of subsection (8) shall provide that before making or revising the assessment arrangements the person specified in the order—

- (a) shall consult the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation, and
- (b) may consult such other persons as that person considers appropriate.”

(4) After subsection (12) (as inserted by paragraph 35 of Schedule 12) insert—

“(12A) An order under subsection (3)(c) which authorises a person to make delegated supplementary provisions shall provide that before making, amending or revoking any such provisions the person so authorised—

- (a) shall consult the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation, and
- (b) may consult such other persons as that person considers appropriate.”

**Commencement Information**

**I110** S. 159(1)(2) in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1](#)

**I111** S. 159(3)(4) in force at 1.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1](#)

**160 EYFS assessment arrangements: duty to consult Ofqual etc.**

(1) Section 42 of the Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21) (further provisions about assessment arrangements) is amended as follows.

(2) Before subsection (1) insert—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“(A1) Before making a learning and development order specifying assessment arrangements the Secretary of State—

- (a) must consult the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation, and
- (b) may consult such other persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.”

(3) After subsection (3) insert—

“(3A) A learning and development order which includes provision made by virtue of subsection (3) must provide that before making or revising the assessment arrangements the person specified in the order—

- (a) must consult the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation, and
- (b) may consult such other persons as that person considers appropriate.”

(4) After subsection (6A) (as inserted by paragraph 40 of Schedule 12) insert—

“(6AA) A learning and development order which authorises a person to make delegated supplementary provisions must provide that before making, amending or revoking any such provisions the person so authorised—

- (a) must consult the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation, and
- (b) may consult such other persons as that person considers appropriate.”

#### **Commencement Information**

**I112** S. 160(1)(2) in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

**I113** S. 160(3)(4) in force at 1.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

#### *Review etc. of regulated assessment arrangements*

### **161 Review of regulated assessment arrangements**

- (1) Ofqual must keep under review all aspects of NC assessment arrangements.
- (2) Ofqual must keep under review all aspects of EYFS assessment arrangements.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I114** S. 161 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

### **162 Powers to require information**

- (1) Ofqual may at any time require a person falling within subsection (2) to provide it with any information which Ofqual considers it necessary or expedient to have for the purposes of, or in connection with, the performance by Ofqual of its function under section 161(1).
- (2) The persons are—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) the Secretary of State;
  - (b) an NC responsible body;
  - (c) Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills;
  - (d) any other person specified or of a description specified in regulations.
- (3) Ofqual may at any time require a person falling within subsection (4) to provide it with any information which Ofqual considers it necessary or expedient to have for the purposes of, or in connection with, the performance by Ofqual of its function under section 161(2).
- (4) The persons are—
- (a) the Secretary of State;
  - (b) an EYFS responsible body;
  - (c) Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills;
  - (d) any other person specified or of a description specified in regulations.

- (5) In this Chapter—

“EYFS responsible body” means a person who under or by virtue of an order made under section 39(1)(a) of the Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21) has functions in relation to the development, implementation or monitoring of EYFS assessment arrangements;

“NC responsible body” means a person who under or by virtue of an order made under section 87(3)(c) of the Education Act 2002 (c. 32) has functions in relation to the development, implementation or monitoring of NC assessment arrangements.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I115** S. 162 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

### **163 Duty to notify significant failings**

- (1) If it appears to Ofqual that there is or is likely to be a significant failing in NC assessment arrangements Ofqual must notify—
- (a) the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) any NC responsible body whose act or omission appears to Ofqual to have contributed to the significant failing.
- (2) If it appears to Ofqual that there is or is likely to be a significant failing in EYFS assessment arrangements Ofqual must notify—
- (a) the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) any EYFS responsible body whose act or omission appears to Ofqual to have contributed to the significant failing.
- (3) There is a significant failing in NC assessment arrangements or (as the case may be) EYFS assessment arrangements if, as a result of the way in which the arrangements are being developed or implemented, they fail in a significant way to achieve one or more of the specified purposes of the arrangements.



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### **Commencement Information**

**II16** S. 163 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

### *Regulatory frameworks*

#### **164 NC assessments regulatory framework**

- (1) Ofqual must prepare and publish a document (“the NC assessments regulatory framework”) which—
  - (a) contains a description of how Ofqual intends to perform its function under section 161(1), and
  - (b) gives guidance to NC responsible bodies about the performance of their functions in relation to NC assessment arrangements.
- (2) Ofqual—
  - (a) may revise the NC assessments regulatory framework, and
  - (b) if it does so, it must publish the revised version.
- (3) Before publishing the NC assessments regulatory framework or a revised version of it, Ofqual must consult—
  - (a) the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) such NC responsible bodies and other persons as it considers appropriate.
- (4) An NC responsible body must have regard to the NC assessments regulatory framework in performing its functions in relation to NC assessment arrangements.

#### **Commencement Information**

**II17** S. 164 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch. 1](#)

#### **165 EYFS assessments regulatory framework**

- (1) Ofqual must prepare and publish a document (“the EYFS assessments regulatory framework”) which—
  - (a) contains a description of how Ofqual intends to perform its function under section 161(2), and
  - (b) gives guidance to EYFS responsible bodies about the performance of their functions in relation to EYFS assessment arrangements.
- (2) Ofqual—
  - (a) may revise the EYFS assessments regulatory framework, and
  - (b) if it does so, it must publish the revised version.
- (3) Before publishing the EYFS assessments regulatory framework or a revised version of it, Ofqual must consult—
  - (a) the Secretary of State, and
  - (b) such EYFS responsible bodies and other persons as it considers appropriate.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) An EYFS responsible body must have regard to the EYFS assessments regulatory framework in performing its functions in relation to EYFS assessment arrangements.

**Commencement Information**  
**I118** S. 165 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

*General*

**166 Interpretation of Chapter**

In this Chapter—  
“EYFS assessment arrangements” has the meaning given by section 131;  
“EYFS responsible body” has the meaning given by section 162;  
“NC assessment arrangements” has the meaning given by section 131;  
“NC responsible body” has the meaning given by section 162.

**Commencement Information**  
**I119** S. 166 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**CHAPTER 4**

**OTHER FUNCTIONS**

**167 Provision of services**

- (1) Ofqual may, in connection with any of its functions, provide services to any person (whether or not in the United Kingdom).
- (2) Services provided by virtue of this section may be provided on such terms and subject to such conditions (if any) as Ofqual may determine.
- (3) Ofqual may charge a fee for, or in connection with, any service provided by virtue of this section.

**Commencement Information**  
**I120** S. 167 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**168 Provision of information or advice**

- (1) If requested to do so by the Secretary of State, Ofqual must provide the Secretary of State with information or advice on such matters relating to any of its functions as may be specified in the request.

<sup>F195</sup>(2) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F195** S. 168(2) repealed (14.6.2016) by [The Education \(Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/642\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. Table 1](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I121** S. 168 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

### 169 Research and development

- (1) Ofqual may carry out programmes of research and development for purposes connected with—
  - (a) qualifications to which this Part applies, or
  - (b) regulated assessment arrangements.
- (2) Ofqual may commission, co-ordinate or facilitate the carrying out of programmes of research and development for the purposes mentioned in subsection (1).

#### Commencement Information

**I122** S. 169 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

### 170 Duty not to impose or maintain unnecessary burdens

- (1) Ofqual must keep its regulatory functions under review.
- (2) Ofqual must secure that in performing any of its regulatory functions it does not—
  - (a) impose burdens which it considers to be unnecessary, or
  - (b) maintain burdens which it considers to have become unnecessary.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not require the removal of a burden which has become unnecessary where its removal would, having regard to all the circumstances, be impracticable or disproportionate.
- (4) Ofqual must publish a statement setting out—
  - (a) what it proposes to do pursuant to subsections (1) and (2) in the period to which the statement relates,
  - (b) (except in the case of the first statement published under this section) what it has done pursuant to subsections (1) and (2) since the previous statement was published under this section, and
  - (c) where a burden which has become unnecessary is maintained pursuant to subsection (3), the reasons why the removal of the burden would, having regard to all the circumstances, be impracticable or disproportionate.
- (5) The first statement published under this section—
  - (a) must be published as soon as reasonably practicable after the commencement of section 127, and
  - (b) is to be a statement for the period of 12 months beginning with the day of its publication.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) A subsequent statement published under this section—
- (a) must be published during the period to which the previous statement related or as soon as reasonably practicable after the end of that period, and
  - (b) must be a statement for the period of 12 months beginning with the end of the period to which the previous statement related.
- (7) Ofqual must, in performing any of its regulatory functions during a period for which a statement is in force under this section, have regard to the statement.
- (8) In this section “regulatory function” has the same meaning as in the Legislative and Regulatory Reform Act 2006 (c. 51) (see section 32 of that Act).

**Commencement Information**

**I123** S. 170 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

**171 Annual and other reports**

- (1) As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of each reporting period Ofqual must prepare and publish a report for the period (“the annual report”).
- (2) The annual report must include—
- (a) a statement of what Ofqual has done in performing its functions in the reporting period;
  - (b) an assessment of the extent to which Ofqual has met its objectives in that period;
  - (c) details of any information obtained by Ofqual in that period on the levels of attainment in relevant regulated qualifications.
- (3) “Relevant regulated qualifications” are regulated qualifications that are taken wholly or mainly by pupils at schools in England.
- (4) An assessment under subsection (2)(b) in respect of the qualifications standards objective must in particular explain how, in making the assessment, Ofqual has taken account of any information within subsection (2)(c) obtained in the reporting period or an earlier reporting period.
- (5) If arrangements of the kind mentioned in section 150(2) (arrangements for referral of complaints to an independent party) were in place during the reporting period, the annual report must include a description of the activities of the independent party during the reporting period.
- (6) Ofqual must—
- (a) lay a copy of each annual report before Parliament;
  - <sup>F196</sup>(b) .....
- (7) Ofqual may prepare and publish other reports on matters relating to its functions.
- (8) If Ofqual prepares and publishes a report under subsection (7) it may—
- (a) lay a copy of the report before Parliament;
  - <sup>F197</sup>(b) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) Ofqual may comply with subsection (1) by preparing and publishing a single document or separate documents <sup>F198</sup>....
- (10) In this section “reporting period” means—
- (a) the period (being not longer than 12 months) beginning with the day on which section 127 comes into force and ending on such date as Ofqual decides;
  - (b) each successive period of 12 months.

#### Textual Amendments

- F196** S. 171(6)(b) repealed (14.6.2016) by [The Education \(Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/642\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. Table 1](#)
- F197** S. 171(8)(b) repealed (14.6.2016) by [The Education \(Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/642\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. Table 1](#)
- F198** Words in s. 171(9) repealed (14.6.2016) by [The Education \(Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/642\)](#), art. 1, [Sch. Table 1](#)

#### Commencement Information

- I124** S. 171 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, [Sch. 1](#)

## CHAPTER 5

### GENERAL

#### 172 Interpretation of Part

- (1) In this Part—
- “institution within the higher education sector”—
- (a) in relation to England, has the same meaning as in the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (see section 4(4) of that Act);
  - (b) <sup>F199</sup>...
- “Ofqual” means the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation;
- “qualification to which this Part applies” has the meaning given by section 130;
- “regulated assessment arrangements” has the meaning given by section 131;
- “regulated qualification” has the meaning given by section 130;
- “the specified purposes”, in relation to regulated assessment arrangements, has the meaning given by section 131.
- (2) In this Part a reference to the award or authentication of a qualification includes a reference to—
- (a) the award or authentication of credits in respect of components of a qualification, and
  - (b) the award or authentication of a qualification by a body either alone or jointly with others.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In this Part a reference to recognition, or being recognised, in respect of a qualification is a reference to recognition, or being recognised, under section 132 in respect of the award or authentication of the qualification or of a description of qualification which applies to the qualification.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F199** Words in s. 172(1) repealed (14.6.2016) by [The Education \(Repeal of Arrangements for Vocational Qualifications Awarded or Authenticated in Northern Ireland\) Order 2016 \(S.I. 2016/642\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. Table 1**

#### **Commencement Information**

**I125** S. 172 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, **Sch. 1**

### **<sup>F200</sup>173 Transfer schemes**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F200** S. 173 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), **Sch. 8 para. 24**; [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2

### **174 Minor and consequential amendments**

Schedule 12 contains minor and consequential amendments relating to the provision made by this Part (and Part 8).

#### **Commencement Information**

**I126** S. 174 in force at 1.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, **Sch. 1**

**I127** S. 174 in force at 1.11.2010 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2010/2413](#), **art. 2(a)** (with arts. 3-5)

## **PART 8**

### THE QUALIFICATIONS AND CURRICULUM DEVELOPMENT AGENCY

#### **CHAPTER 1**

#### THE QCDA, OBJECTIVE AND GENERAL DUTIES

#### *The QCDA*

### **<sup>F201</sup>175 The Qualifications and Curriculum Development Agency**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

*Objective and general duties*

**F201** **176 Objective**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F201** **177 General duties**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**CHAPTER 2**

FUNCTIONS IN RELATION TO QUALIFICATIONS

**F201** **178 Qualifications within the QCDA's remit**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F201** **179 Qualifications: general functions**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F201** **180 Assistance etc. in relation to qualifications functions of Ofqual**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**  
F201 Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**CHAPTER 3**

FUNCTIONS IN RELATION TO CURRICULUM, EARLY YEARS FOUNDATION STAGE AND ASSESSMENT

F201 **181 Curriculum**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F201 Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

F201 **182 Early learning goals and educational programmes**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F201 Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

F201 **183 Assessment arrangements**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
F201 Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**CHAPTER 4**

OTHER FUNCTIONS AND SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISION

*Other functions*

F201 **184 Provision of services or other assistance**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F201 185 Provision of information or advice**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F201 186 Ancillary activities**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F201 187 Co-operation and joint working**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

**F201 188 Power to confer supplementary functions on the QCDA**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

*Supplementary provision*

**F201 189 Directions etc. by the Secretary of State**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## **F201 190 Guidance by the Secretary of State**

.....

### **Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

## **CHAPTER 5**

### **GENERAL**

## **F201 191 Interpretation of Part**

.....

### **Textual Amendments**

**F201** Ss. 175-191 repealed (1.4.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 25, 82(3)**; S.I. 2012/924, art. 2

## **192 Minor and consequential amendments**

Schedule 12 contains minor and consequential amendments relating to the provision made by this Part (and by Part 7).

### **Commencement Information**

**I128** S. 192 in force at 1.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/1151](#), art. 2, **Sch. 1**

**I129** S. 192 in force at 1.11.2010 for specified purposes for W. by [S.I. 2010/2413](#), **art. 2(a)** (with arts. 3-5)

## **PART 9**

### **CHILDREN'S SERVICES**

#### *Co-operation to improve well-being of children*

## **193 Arrangements to promote co-operation**

(1) Section 10 of the Children Act 2004 (c. 31) (co-operation to improve well-being) is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (5).

(2) In subsection (4)—

(a) after paragraph (f) insert—

“(fa) the governing body of a maintained school that is maintained by the authority in their capacity as a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority];

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (fb) the proprietor of a school approved by the Secretary of State under section 342 of the Education Act 1996 and situated in the authority's area;
- (fc) the proprietor of a city technology college, city college for the technology of the arts or Academy situated in the authority's area;
- (fd) the governing body of an institution within the further education sector the main site of which is situated in the authority's area;
- (fe) the Secretary of State, in relation to the Secretary of State's functions under section 2 of the Employment and Training Act 1973.”;

(b) omit paragraph (g).

(3) After subsection (5) insert—

“(5A) For the purposes of arrangements under this section a relevant person or body may—

- (a) provide staff, goods, services, accommodation or other resources to another relevant person or body;
- (b) make contributions to a fund out of which relevant payments may be made.”

(4) Omit subsections (6) and (7).

(5) After subsection (9) insert—

“(10) In deciding for the purposes of subsection (4)(fd) whether the main site of an institution within the further education sector is situated within the area of a children's services authority, the authority and the governing body of the institution must have regard to any guidance given to them by the Secretary of State.

(11) In this section—

“governing body”, in relation to an institution within the further education sector, has the meaning given by section 90 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992;

“institution within the further education sector” has the meaning given by section 4(3) of the Education Act 1996;

“maintained school” has the meaning given by section 39(1) of the Education Act 2002;

“proprietor”, in relation to a city technology college, city college for the technology of the arts, Academy or other school, means the person or body of persons responsible for its management;

“relevant payment”, in relation to a fund, means a payment in respect of expenditure incurred, by a relevant person or body contributing to the fund, in the exercise of its functions;

“relevant person or body” means—

- (a) a children's services authority in England;
- (b) a relevant partner of a children's services authority in England.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**

### Commencement Information

**I130** S. 193(1) (2)(a) (3)-(5) in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), art. 2, **Sch.**

**I131** S. 193(2)(b) in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

## 194 Children's Trust Boards

- (1) Part 2 of the Children Act 2004 (c. 31) (children's services in England) is amended as set out in subsections (2) to (5).
- (2) After section 12 insert—

### *“Children's Trust Boards*

#### **12A Establishment of CTBs**

- (1) Arrangements made by a [<sup>F202</sup>local authority] in England under section 10 must include arrangements for the establishment of a Children's Trust Board for their area.
- (2) A Children's Trust Board must include a representative of each of the following—
  - (a) the establishing authority;
  - (b) each of the establishing authority's relevant partners (subject to subsection (4)).
- (3) A Children's Trust Board may also include any other persons or bodies that the establishing authority, after consulting each of their relevant partners, think appropriate.
- (4) A Children's Trust Board need not include any of the establishing authority's relevant partners who are of a description prescribed by regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (5) Subsection (2) does not require a Children's Trust Board to include a separate representative for each of the persons or bodies mentioned in subsection (2) (a) and (b).
- (6) Where two or more [<sup>F202</sup>local authorities] jointly make arrangements under section 10 for the establishment of a Children's Trust Board, references in sections 12B and 17 to the area of the authority that established the Board are to be read as references to an area consisting of the combined areas of those authorities.
- (7) For the purposes of this section and sections 12B and 12C—
  - (a) “the establishing authority”, in relation to a Children's Trust Board, is the [<sup>F202</sup>local authority] that establishes the Board;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) a person or body is a “relevant partner” of a [F202local authority] if it is a relevant partner of the authority for the purposes of section 10.

### **12B Functions and procedures of CTBs**

- (1) The functions of a Children's Trust Board are—
- (a) those conferred by or under section 17 or 17A (children and young people's plans);
  - (b) any further functions conferred by regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Regulations under subsection (1)(b) may confer a function on a Children's Trust Board only if the function relates to improving the well-being of children or relevant young persons in the area of the establishing authority.
- (3) In subsection (2) “well-being” means well-being so far as relating to one or more of the matters specified in section 10(2)(a) to (e).
- (4) A Children's Trust Board must have regard to any guidance given to it by the Secretary of State in connection with—
- (a) the procedures to be followed by it;
  - (b) the exercise of its functions.
- (5) In this section “relevant young persons” means persons, other than children, in relation to whom arrangements under section 10 may be made.

### **12C Funding of CTBs**

- (1) The establishing authority and any of their relevant partners represented on a Children's Trust Board may make payments towards expenditure incurred by, or for purposes connected with, the Board—
- (a) by making the payments directly; or
  - (b) by contributing to a fund out of which the payments may be made.
- (2) The establishing authority and any of their relevant partners represented on a Children's Trust Board may provide staff, goods, services, accommodation or other resources for purposes connected with the functions of the Board.
- (3) Two or more Children's Trust Boards may establish and maintain a pooled fund for the purposes of any of their functions.
- (4) A pooled fund is a fund—
- (a) which is made up of contributions by the Boards concerned, and
  - (b) out of which payments may be made towards expenditure incurred in the discharge of functions of any of the Boards.

### **12D Supply of information to CTBs**

- (1) A person or body represented on a Children's Trust Board must supply to the Board any information requested by the Board for the purpose of enabling or assisting it to perform its functions.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (2) Information supplied to a Children's Trust Board under this section may be used by the Board only for the purpose of enabling or assisting it to perform its functions.
- (3) Information requested under subsection (1) must be information that relates to—
  - (a) the person or body to whom the request is made;
  - (b) a function of that person or body, or
  - (c) a person in respect of whom a function is exercisable by that person or body.”

(3) For section 17 substitute—

**“17 Children and young people's plans**

- (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations require a Children's Trust Board established by virtue of arrangements under section 10 from time to time to prepare and publish a children and young people's plan.
- (2) A children and young people's plan is a plan setting out the strategy of the persons or bodies represented on the Board for co-operating with each other with a view to improving the well-being of children and relevant young persons in the area of the authority that established the Board.
- (3) In subsection (2) “well-being” means well-being so far as relating to the matters specified in section 10(2)(a) to (e).
- (4) Regulations under this section may in particular make provision as to—
  - (a) the matters to be dealt with in a children and young people's plan;
  - (b) the period to which a children and young people's plan is to relate;
  - (c) when and how a children and young people's plan must be published;
  - (d) keeping a children and young people's plan under review;
  - (e) revising a children and young people's plan;
  - (f) consultation to be carried out during preparation or revision of a children and young people's plan;
  - (g) other steps required or permitted to be taken in connection with the preparation or revision of a children and young people's plan.
- (5) In this section “relevant young persons” means persons, other than children, in relation to whom arrangements under section 10 may be made.

**17A Children and young people's plans: implementation**

- (1) This section applies where a Children's Trust Board prepares a children and young people's plan in accordance with regulations under section 17.
- (2) The persons and bodies whose strategy for co-operation is set out in the plan must have regard to the plan in exercising their functions.
- (3) The Board must—
  - (a) monitor the extent to which the persons and bodies whose strategy for co-operation is set out in the plan are acting in accordance with the plan;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) prepare and publish an annual report about the extent to which, during the year to which the report relates, those persons and bodies have acted in accordance with the plan.”
- (4) In section 18(2) (functions of [<sup>F203</sup>local authority] exercisable by director of children's services) in paragraph (d) for “and 17” substitute “, 12C, 12D and 17A ”.
- (5) In section 23(3) (sections 20 to 22: meaning of “children's services”) in paragraph (b) for “13” substitute “ 12B ”.
- (6) In section 50(2) of the Children Act 2004 (c. 31) (intervention: relevant functions) in paragraph (c) for “and 17” substitute “, 12C, 12D and 17A ”.
- (7) In section 66(3) of that Act (regulations and orders subject to affirmative procedure) after “12” insert “, 12B(1)(b) ”.
- (8) In section 47A of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (schools forums)—
- (a) after subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) In exercising its functions, a schools forum is to have regard to any children and young people's plan prepared by the local Children's Trust Board.”;
- (b) after subsection (9) insert—
- “(10) In this section—
- (a) a “children and young people's plan” means a plan published by a Children's Trust Board under section 17 of the Children Act 2004;
- (b) “the local Children's Trust Board”, in relation to a schools forum, is the Children's Trust Board established by arrangements made under section 10 of that Act by the relevant authority <sup>F204</sup> ....”
- (9) In section 21 of the Education Act 2002 (c. 32)—
- (a) in subsection (9) for paragraph (a) (but not the “and” immediately after it) substitute—
- “(a) in relation to a school in England, any plan published by the relevant Children's Trust Board under section 17 of the Children Act 2004 (children and young people's plans: England),”;
- (b) after subsection (9) insert—
- “(10) In subsection (9)(a), “the relevant Children's Trust Board” means the Children's Trust Board established by arrangements made under section 10 of the Children Act 2004 by the [<sup>F33</sup>local authority]<sup>F205</sup> ....”

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**

**F202** Words in s. 194(2) substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(7)(a)** (with Sch. 4 para. 2)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F203** Words in s. 194(4) substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(7)(b)** (with Sch. 4 para. 2)
- F204** Words in s. 194(8)(b) repealed (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(7)(c), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1** (with Sch. 4 para. 2)
- F205** Words in s. 194(9)(b) repealed (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(7)(d), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1** (with Sch. 4 para. 2)

#### Commencement Information

- I132** S. 194(1)(2)(3) in force at 26.2.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 2, **Sch. 1** (with arts. 9-11)
- I133** S. 194(1)-(3) in force at 1.4.2010 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)
- I134** S. 194(4)-(9) in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-12)

### *Safeguarding and promoting the welfare of children*

## 195 Targets for safeguarding and promoting the welfare of children

(1) Before section 10 of the Children Act 2004 (c. 31) insert—

### “9A Targets for safeguarding and promoting the welfare of children

- (1) The Secretary of State may, in accordance with regulations, set safeguarding targets for a children's services authority in England.
- (2) The regulations may, in particular—
  - (a) make provision about matters by reference to which safeguarding targets may, or must, be set;
  - (b) make provision about periods to which safeguarding targets may, or must, relate;
  - (c) make provision about the procedure for setting safeguarding targets;
  - (d) specify requirements with which a children's services authority in England must comply in connection with the setting of safeguarding targets.
- (3) In exercising their functions, a children's services authority in England must act in the manner best calculated to secure that any safeguarding targets set under this section (so far as relating to the area of the authority) are met.
- (4) “Safeguarding targets”, in relation to a children's services authority in England, are targets for safeguarding and promoting the welfare of children in the authority's area.”

(2) In section 66 of that Act (regulations and orders)—

- (a) in subsection (4) after “containing” insert “ the first regulations under section 9A or ”;
- (b) in subsection (5)(a) for “to which subsection (3) does not apply” substitute “ to which neither of subsections (3) and (4) applies ”.



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In Schedule 1 to the Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 (c. 42) (social services functions) in the entry relating to the Children Act 2004—
- (a) in the first column, after “Sections” insert “ 9A, ”;
  - (b) in the second column, after “to” insert “ targets for safeguarding and promoting the welfare of children, and to ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I135** S. 195 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#)

### 196 Local Safeguarding Children Boards: lay members

- (1) Part 2 of the Children Act 2004 is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 13 (establishment of LSCBs) after subsection (5) insert—
- “(5A) A [<sup>F206</sup>local authority] in England must take reasonable steps to ensure that the Local Safeguarding Children Board established by them also includes two persons who appear to the authority to be representative of persons living in the authority's area.
- (5B) An authority may pay remuneration, allowances and expenses to persons who are included by virtue of subsection (5A) in a Local Safeguarding Children Board established by them.”
- (3) In section 14 (functions and procedures of LSCBs) in subsection (1)(a) after “the Board” insert “ by virtue of section 13(2), (4) or (5) ”.

#### Textual Amendments

**F206** Words in s. 196(2) substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), [art. 1](#), [Sch. 2 para. 16\(8\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I136** S. 196 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 3](#), [Sch. 2](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#))

### 197 Local Safeguarding Children Boards: annual reports

After section 14 of the Children Act 2004 (c. 31) insert—

#### “14A LSCBs: annual reports

- (1) At least once in every 12 month period, a Local Safeguarding Children Board established under section 13 must prepare and publish a report about safeguarding and promoting the welfare of children in its local area.
- (2) The Board must submit a copy of the report to the local Children's Trust Board.
- (3) For the purposes of this section—
  - (a) the local area of a Local Safeguarding Children Board is the area of the [<sup>F207</sup>local authority] that established the Board;

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the local Children's Trust Board, in relation to a Local Safeguarding Children Board, is the Children's Trust Board established for the Board's local area.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F207** Words in s. 197 substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(9)**

#### Commencement Information

**I137** S. 197 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, **Sch. 2** (with arts. 9-11)

### *Children's centres*

## 198 Arrangements for children's centres

In Part 1 of the Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21) (functions of local authorities in England in relation to children) after section 5 insert—

“Children's centres

### **5A Arrangements for provision of children's centres**

- (1) Arrangements made by an English local authority under section 3(2) must, so far as is reasonably practicable, include arrangements for sufficient provision of children's centres to meet local need.
- (2) “Local need” is the need of parents, prospective parents and young children in the authority's area.
- (3) In determining what provision of children's centres is sufficient to meet local need, an authority may have regard to any children's centres—
  - (a) that are provided outside the authority's area, or
  - (b) that the authority expect to be provided outside their area.
- (4) For the purposes of this Part and Part 3A a “children's centre” is a place, or a group of places—
  - (a) which is managed by or on behalf of, or under arrangements made with, an English local authority, with a view to securing that early childhood services in their area are made available in an integrated manner,
  - (b) through which each of the early childhood services is made available, and
  - (c) at which activities for young children are provided, whether by way of early years provision or otherwise.
- (5) For the purposes of this section, a service is made available—
  - (a) by providing the service, or
  - (b) by providing advice and assistance to parents and prospective parents on gaining access to the service.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) Guidance given under section 3(6) in respect of arrangements made under section 3(2) by virtue of subsection (1) of this section may, in particular, relate to—
- (a) circumstances in which any early childhood services should be made available through children's centres as mentioned in subsection (5)(a);
  - (b) circumstances in which any early childhood services should be made available through children's centres as mentioned in subsection (5)(b).
- (7) A children's centre provided by virtue of arrangements made by an English local authority under section 3(2) is to be known as a Sure Start Children's Centre.

### **5B Children's centres: staffing, organisation and operation**

- (1) Regulations may make provision about the staffing, organisation and operation of children's centres.
- (2) The regulations may in particular—
- (a) require English local authorities to secure that children's centres have governing bodies;
  - (b) impose obligations and confer powers on any such governing bodies.

### **5C Children's centres: advisory boards**

- (1) This section applies where arrangements made by an English local authority under section 3(2) include arrangements for the provision of one or more children's centres.
- (2) The authority must make arrangements to secure that each of the children's centres is within the remit of an advisory board.
- (3) A children's centre is within the remit of an advisory board if it is specified in relation to the board by the responsible authority.
- (4) An advisory board must provide advice and assistance for the purpose of ensuring the effective operation of the children's centres within its remit.
- (5) An advisory board must include persons representing the interests of—
- (a) each children's centre within its remit;
  - (b) the responsible authority;
  - (c) parents or prospective parents in the responsible authority's area.
- (6) An advisory board may also include persons representing the interests of any other persons or bodies that the responsible authority think appropriate.
- (7) In exercising their functions under this section, an English local authority must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (8) The guidance may in particular relate to—
- (a) the membership of advisory boards;
  - (b) the organisation and operation of advisory boards.
- (9) The “responsible authority”, in relation to an advisory board in respect of which arrangements have been made under subsection (2), is the authority that made the arrangements.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **5D Children's centres: consultation**

- (1) An English local authority must secure that such consultation as they think appropriate is carried out—
  - (a) before making arrangements under section 3(2) for the provision of a children's centre;
  - (b) before any significant change is made in the services provided through a relevant children's centre;
  - (c) before anything is done that would result in a relevant children's centre ceasing to be a children's centre.
- (2) In discharging their duty under this section, an English local authority must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (3) For the purposes of this section a change in the manner in which, or the location at which, services are provided is to be treated as a change in the services.
- (4) A “relevant children's centre”, in relation to an authority, is a children's centre provided by virtue of arrangements made by the authority under section 3(2).

### **5E Duty to consider providing services through a children's centre**

- (1) This section applies where arrangements made by an English local authority under section 3(2) include arrangements for the provision of one or more children's centres.
- (2) The authority must consider whether each of the early childhood services to be provided by them should be provided through any of those children's centres.
- (3) Each relevant partner of the authority must consider whether each of the early childhood services to be provided by it in the authority's area should be provided through any of those children's centres.
- (4) In discharging their duties under this section, the authority and each relevant partner must take into account whether providing a service through any of the children's centres in question would—
  - (a) facilitate access to it, or
  - (b) maximise its benefit to parents, prospective parents and young children.
- (5) In discharging their duties under this section, an English local authority and each of their relevant partners must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.
- (6) For the purposes of this section, early childhood services are provided by a person or body if they are provided on behalf of, or under arrangements made with, that person or body.
- (7) For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this section is to be taken as preventing an English local authority or any of their relevant partners from providing early childhood services otherwise than through a children's centre.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### **5F Children's centres: transitional provision**

- (1) This section applies if immediately before the commencement date an English local authority has made arrangements for the provision of a children's centre.
- (2) To the extent that this would not otherwise be the case, the arrangements are to be treated for the purposes of this Part and Part 3A as made under section 3(2).
- (3) "The commencement date" is the day on which section 198 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 comes into force.

### **5G Children's centres: interpretation**

In sections 5A to 5F—

- “children's centre” has the meaning given by section 5A(4);
- “early childhood services” has the same meaning as in section 3;
- “parent” and “prospective parent” have the same meaning as in section 2;
- “relevant partner” has the same meaning as in section 4.”

## **199 Inspection of children's centres**

After Part 3 of the Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21) (regulation of provision of childcare in England) insert—

“PART 3A INSPECTION OF CHILDREN'S CENTRES

### **98A Inspections**

- (1) The Chief Inspector must—
  - (a) inspect a children's centre at such intervals as may be prescribed;
  - (b) inspect a children's centre at any time when the Secretary of State requires the Chief Inspector to secure its inspection.
- (2) The Chief Inspector may inspect a children's centre at any other time when the Chief Inspector considers that it would be appropriate for it to be inspected.
- (3) Regulations may provide that in prescribed circumstances the Chief Inspector is not required to inspect a children's centre at an interval prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1)(a).
- (4) A requirement made by the Secretary of State as mentioned in subsection (1)
  - (b) may be imposed in relation to—
    - (a) children's centres generally;
    - (b) a class of children's centres;
    - (c) a particular children's centre.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4)(b) a class of children's centres may be described, in particular, by reference to a geographical area.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (6) If the Chief Inspector so elects in the case of an inspection falling within subsection (1)(b) or (2), that inspection is to be treated as if it were an inspection falling within subsection (1)(a).

### 98B Reports

- (1) After conducting an inspection of a children's centre under section 98A, the Chief Inspector must make a report in writing.
- (2) The report must address the centre's contribution to—
- (a) facilitating access to early childhood services by parents, prospective parents and young children;
  - (b) maximising the benefit of those services to parents, prospective parents and young children;
  - (c) improving the well-being of young children.
- (3) Regulations may make provision, for the purposes of subsection (2), about—
- (a) matters required to be dealt with in the report;
  - (b) matters not required to be dealt with in the report.
- (4) The regulations may, in particular, require the matters dealt with in the report to include matters relating to the quality of the leadership and management of the centre, including whether the financial resources made available to it are managed effectively.
- (5) The Chief Inspector—
- (a) may send a copy of the report to the Secretary of State and must do so without delay if the Secretary of State requests a copy;
  - (b) must ensure that a copy of the report is sent without delay to the relevant local authority;
  - (c) may arrange for the report (or parts of it) to be further published in any manner the Chief Inspector considers appropriate.
- (6) For the purposes of this section and section 98C, the “relevant local authority”, in relation to a children's centre, is the English local authority that made the arrangements under section 3(2) by virtue of which the centre is provided.

### 98C Action to be taken by local authority on receiving report

- (1) This section applies where a copy of a report relating to a children's centre is sent to the relevant local authority under section 98B(5)(b).
- (2) The authority may—
- (a) send a copy of the report (or parts of it) to any person they think appropriate;
  - (b) otherwise publish the report (or parts of it) in any manner they think appropriate.
- (3) The authority must secure that a written statement within subsection (4) is prepared and published.
- (4) A statement within this subsection is one setting out—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) the action that each relevant person proposes to take in the light of the report, and
  - (b) the period within which each relevant person proposes to take that action.
- (5) For the purposes of this section and section 98D, each of the following is a relevant person in relation to a children's centre—
- (a) the relevant local authority;
  - (b) any person or body, other than the relevant local authority, managing the centre.
- (6) In exercising their functions under this section, an English local authority must have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Secretary of State.

#### **98D Inspections of children's centres: powers of entry**

- (1) The Chief Inspector may, at any reasonable time, enter any relevant premises in England for the purpose of conducting an inspection of a children's centre under section 98A.
- (2) “Relevant premises”, for the purposes of subsection (1), are—
- (a) premises on which services or activities are being provided through the children's centre;
  - (b) premises of a relevant person which are used in connection with the staffing, organisation or operation of the children's centre.
- (3) But premises used wholly or mainly as a private dwelling are not relevant premises for the purposes of subsection (1).
- (4) An authorisation given by the Chief Inspector under paragraph 9(1) of Schedule 12 to the Education and Inspections Act 2006 in relation to functions under subsection (1)—
- (a) may be given for a particular occasion or period;
  - (b) may be given subject to conditions.
- (5) Subject to any conditions imposed under subsection (4)(b), subsections (6) to (8) apply where a person (“the inspector”) enters premises under this section.
- (6) The inspector may—
- (a) inspect the premises;
  - (b) take measurements and photographs or make recordings;
  - (c) inspect any children for whom activities are provided on the premises, and the arrangements made for their welfare;
  - (d) interview in private any person working on the premises who consents to be interviewed.
- (7) The inspector may inspect, and take copies of, any records or documents relating to—
- (a) the services or activities provided through the children's centre;
  - (b) the staffing, organisation or operation of the children's centre.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (8) The inspector may require a person to afford such facilities and assistance, with respect to matters within the person's control, as are necessary to enable the inspector to exercise the powers conferred by this section.
- (9) Section 58 of the Education Act 2005 (inspection of computer records) applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of Part 1 of that Act.
- (10) In this section “documents” and “records” each include information recorded in any form.

#### 98E **Obstruction of power of entry, etc.**

- (1) A person commits an offence if the person intentionally obstructs another person exercising a power under section 98D.
- (2) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 4 on the standard scale.

#### 98F **Power of constable to assist in exercise of power of entry**

- (1) The Chief Inspector may apply to a court for a warrant under this section.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies if on an application under subsection (1) it appears to the court that the Chief Inspector—
  - (a) has attempted to exercise a power conferred by section 98D but has been prevented from doing so, or
  - (b) is likely to be prevented from exercising any such power.
- (3) The court may issue a warrant authorising any constable to assist the Chief Inspector in the exercise of the power, using reasonable force if necessary.
- (4) A warrant under this section must be addressed to, and executed by, a constable.
- (5) Schedule 11 to the Children Act 1989 (jurisdiction of courts) applies in relation to proceedings under this section as if they were proceedings under that Act.
- (6) Subject to any provision made (by virtue of subsection (5)) by or under Schedule 11 to the Children Act 1989, “court” in this section means—
  - (a) the High Court;
  - (b) a county court;
  - (c) a magistrates' court.

#### 98G **Inspection of children's centres: interpretation**

In sections 98A to 98F—

“the Chief Inspector” means Her Majesty's Chief Inspector of Education, Children's Services and Skills;

“children's centre” has the meaning given by section 5A(4);

“relevant partner” has the same meaning as in section 4.”



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 200 Children's centres: safeguarding children

In paragraph 3(1) of Schedule 4 to the Safeguarding Vulnerable Groups Act 2006 (c. 47) (regulated activities relating to children: establishments) after paragraph (f) insert—

“(fa) a children's centre (within the meaning of section 5A(4) of the Childcare Act 2006);”.

*Arrangements in respect of early childhood services*

## 201 Arrangements in respect of early childhood services

In section 3 of the Childcare Act 2006 (c. 21) (specific duties of local authority in relation to early childhood services) after subsection (4) insert—

“(4A) In deciding what arrangements to make under this section, an English local authority must in particular have regard to—

- (a) the quantity and quality of early childhood services that are provided, or that the authority expect to be provided, in their area, and
- (b) where in that area those services are provided or are expected to be provided.”

*Early years provision: budgetary framework*

## 202 Free of charge early years provision: budgetary framework: England

(1) The School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) is amended as follows.

(2) In section 45A (determination of specified budgets of [<sup>F33</sup>local authority]), after subsection (4A) insert—

“(4B) For the purposes of this Part, the duty imposed on a local authority in England by section 7(1) of the Childcare Act 2006 (duty to secure prescribed early years provision free of charge) is to be treated as imposed on the authority in their capacity as a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority].”

(3) After section 47 (determination of school's budget share) insert—

### “47ZA Free of charge early years provision outside a maintained school: budgetary framework: England

- (1) This section applies where a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England propose to allocate an amount of relevant financial assistance to a relevant childcare provider for a funding period out of the authority's individual schools budget for the period.
- (2) The amount to be allocated is to be determined in accordance with regulations.
- (3) Financial assistance provided by a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England to a childcare provider is “relevant” financial assistance if it is provided—
  - (a) for the purpose of the discharge of the authority's duty under section 7 of the Childcare Act 2006, and
  - (b) in respect of the provision of childcare.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Regulations under this section may, in particular—
- (a) specify factors or criteria which an authority are to take into account in determining the amount of any relevant financial assistance to be provided by them to a relevant childcare provider;
  - (b) specify factors or criteria which an authority are to disregard in determining such an amount;
  - (c) specify requirements as to other matters with which an authority are to comply in determining such an amount;
  - (d) make provision about consultation to be carried out by an authority in connection with determining such an amount;
  - (e) authorise an authority, in prescribed circumstances and to a prescribed extent, to determine such an amount in accordance with arrangements approved by the Secretary of State (instead of in accordance with arrangements provided for by the regulations);
  - (f) require an authority to provide relevant childcare providers with prescribed information relating to their determination of such an amount;
  - (g) make provision about the circumstances in which an authority are required to redetermine such an amount;
  - (h) specify a time by which an authority's determination of such an amount is to take place.
- (5) For the purposes of this section—
- (a) “childcare” has the meaning given in section 18 of the Childcare Act 2006;
  - (b) “relevant childcare provider” means a provider of childcare other than the governing body of a maintained school;
  - (c) a reference to an authority's determination of the amount of any relevant financial assistance includes a reference to the authority's redetermination of such an amount.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , [Sch. 2 para. 16\(2\)](#)

#### Commencement Information

**I138** S. 202(1)(2) in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#) , [art. 2](#) , [Sch.](#)

**I139** S. 202(3) in force at 28.2.2011 by [S.I. 2010/2374](#) , [art. 3](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART 10

### SCHOOLS

#### CHAPTER 1

##### SCHOOLS CAUSING CONCERN

###### *Schools causing concern: England*

### 203 Powers in relation to schools causing concern: England

Schedule 13 makes provision in relation to schools causing concern in England.

#### Commencement Information

**I140** S. 203 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#)

### 204 Power to require <sup>F34</sup>local authorities] in England to obtain advisory services

(1) Section 62A of the Education Act 2002 (power of Secretary of State to require <sup>F34</sup>local authorities] in England to obtain advisory services) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (1) insert—

“(1A) This section also applies where it appears to the Secretary of State that—

- (a) a <sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England maintain a disproportionate number of low-performing schools, and
- (b) the authority—
  - (i) have not been effective or are unlikely to be effective in securing an improvement in the standards of performance of pupils at those schools, or
  - (ii) are unlikely to be effective in securing an improvement in the standards of performance of pupils at other schools which may in the future be low-performing schools.

(1B) In subsection (1A) “low-performing school” means a school at which the standards of performance of pupils are unacceptably low.

(1C) For the purposes of subsection (1B) the standards of performance of pupils at a school are low if they are low by reference to any one or more of the following—

- (a) the standards that the pupils might in all the circumstances reasonably be expected to attain;
- (b) where relevant, the standards previously attained by them;
- (c) the standards attained by pupils at comparable schools.”

(3) In subsection (4) after “section” insert—

““pupil” has the same meaning as in the Education Act 1996 (see sections 3 and 19(5) of that Act);”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**
- F34** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(3)**

#### Commencement Information

- I141** S. 204 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#) , art. 2, **Sch.**

### *Schools causing concern: Wales*

#### <sup>F208</sup>**205 Powers in relation to schools causing concern: Wales**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F208** S. 205 omitted (20.2.2014) by virtue of [School Standards and Organisation \(Wales\) Act 2013 \(anaw 1\)](#) , s. 100(4), **Sch. 5 para. 12**; [S.I. 2014/178](#) , art. 2(f) (with art. 3)

## CHAPTER 2

### COMPLAINTS: ENGLAND

#### <sup>F209</sup>**206 Complaints to which this Chapter applies**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); [S.I. 2012/1087](#) , art. 2 (with art. 6)

#### <sup>F209</sup>**207 Power of Local Commissioner to investigate complaint**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#) , **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); [S.I. 2012/1087](#) , art. 2 (with art. 6)

#### <sup>F209</sup>**208 Time-limit etc for making complaint**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with [art. 6](#))

**F209 209 Procedure in respect of investigations**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with [art. 6](#))

**F209 210 Investigations: further provisions**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with [art. 6](#))

**F209 211 Statements about investigations**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with [art. 6](#))

**F209 212 Adverse findings notices**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with [art. 6](#))

**F209 213 Publication of statements etc. by Local Commissioner**

.....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 214 Disclosure of information**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 215 Permitted disclosures of information by Local Commissioner**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 216 Law of defamation**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 217 Consultation with Parliamentary Commissioner for Administration**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 218 Arrangements etc. to be made by Commission**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 219 Annual reports**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 220 Secretary of State's power of direction**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 221 Disapplication of certain powers of Secretary of State**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 222 Power to amend meaning of “qualifying school”**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

**F209 223 Amendments consequential on Chapter 2**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

### <sup>F209</sup>224 Interpretation of Chapter 2

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F209** Ss. 206-224 repealed (1.8.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)

## CHAPTER 3

### INSPECTIONS

#### 225 Interim statements

- (1) The Education Act 2005 (c. 18) is amended as follows.
- (2) After section 10 insert—

##### “10A Interim statements between inspections

- (1) The Chief Inspector may make a statement (an “interim statement”) about a school in England to which section 5 applies.
- (2) An interim statement is a statement—
  - (a) that the Chief Inspector is of the opinion that it is not necessary for the school to be inspected under section 5 for at least a year after the date on which the statement is made,
  - (b) setting out the Chief Inspector's reasons for forming that opinion, and
  - (c) containing such other information (if any) as the Chief Inspector considers appropriate.
- (3) The Chief Inspector may arrange for an interim statement to be published in such manner as the Chief Inspector considers appropriate.
- (4) Section 151 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 (publication of inspection reports: privilege and electronic publication) applies in relation to an interim statement as it applies in relation to a report.”
- (3) In the italic heading before section 14 after “reports” insert “ and interim statements ”.
- (4) After section 14 insert—



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**“14A Destination of interim statements: maintained schools**

- (1) The Chief Inspector must ensure that a copy of any interim statement about a maintained school is sent without delay to the appropriate authority for the school.
- (2) The Chief Inspector must ensure that copies of the statement are sent—
  - (a) to the head teacher of the school,
  - (b) to whichever of the [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] and the governing body are not the appropriate authority, and
  - (c) in the case of a school having foundation governors, to the person who appoints them and (if different) to the appropriate appointing authority.
- (3) If the school provides full-time education suitable to the requirements of pupils over compulsory school age, the Chief Inspector must ensure that a copy of the statement is also sent to the Young People's Learning Agency for England.
- (4) The appropriate authority must—
  - (a) make a copy of any statement sent to the authority under subsection (1) available for inspection by members of the public at such times and at such places as may be reasonable,
  - (b) provide one copy of the statement free of charge to any person who asks for one, and
  - (c) take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that every registered parent of a registered pupil at the school receives a copy of the statement within such period following receipt of the statement by the authority as may be prescribed.”
- (5) In the italic heading before section 16 after “reports” insert “ and interim statements ”.
- (6) After section 16 insert—

**“16A Destination of interim statements: non-maintained schools**

- (1) The Chief Inspector must ensure that a copy of any interim statement about a school other than a maintained school is sent without delay to the proprietor of the school.
- (2) In the case of a special school which is not a community or foundation special school, the proprietor must without delay send a copy of any interim statement sent to the proprietor under subsection (1) to any [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] that are paying fees in respect of the attendance of a registered pupil at the school.
- (3) The proprietor of the school must—
  - (a) make any statement sent to the proprietor under subsection (1) available for inspection by members of the public at such times and at such place as may be reasonable,
  - (b) provide one copy of the statement free of charge to any person who asks for one, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) take such steps as are reasonably practicable to secure that every registered parent of a registered pupil at the school receives a copy of the statement within such period following receipt of the statement by the proprietor as may be prescribed.”

- (7) In section 18 (interpretation of Chapter) after the definition of “the Chief Inspector” insert—

““interim statement” means an interim statement under section 10A;”.

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**

#### Commencement Information

**I142** S. 225 in force at 12.1.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), [art. 2](#), **Sch.**

**I143** S. 225 in force at 1.4.2010 in so far as not already in force by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 3](#), **Sch. 2** (with [arts. 9-11](#))

## 226 Powers of persons providing administrative support in connection with inspections

- (1) Part 2 of Schedule 12 to the Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40) (inspectors etc acting on behalf of Chief Inspector) is amended as follows.
- (2) In paragraph 9(1) (delegation of functions), after paragraph (c) insert “or  
(d) any inspection administrator,”, (and omit “or” at the end of paragraph (b)).
- (3) In paragraph 9(2)(a) for “and 11(4)” substitute “, 11(4) and 11A(3) ”.
- (4) In paragraph 10(1) (inspectors etc to have necessary qualifications, experience and skills), after paragraph (c) insert “or  
(d) an inspection administrator,”, (and omit “or” at the end of paragraph (b)).
- (5) After paragraph 11 insert—

### 11A “Inspection administrators

- (1) The Chief Inspector may enter into arrangements with inspection service providers under which they provide the services of persons to provide administrative support in connection with the carrying out of inspections.
- (2) A person providing administrative support in pursuance of arrangements under sub-paragraph (1) is to be known as an inspection administrator.
- (3) The Chief Inspector may not authorise an inspection administrator to conduct an inspection.”

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**Commencement Information**

**I144** S. 226 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#)

**CHAPTER 4**

SCHOOL SUPPORT STAFF PAY AND CONDITIONS: ENGLAND

*The SSSNB*

<sup>F210</sup>**227 The School Support Staff Negotiating Body**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(1\)](#), 82(3); [S.I. 2012/84](#), art. 3

<sup>F210</sup>**228 Matters within SSSNB's remit**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(1\)](#), 82(3); [S.I. 2012/84](#), art. 3

*Consideration of matter by SSSNB*

<sup>F210</sup>**229 Referral of matter to SSSNB for consideration**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(1\)](#), 82(3); [S.I. 2012/84](#), art. 3

<sup>F210</sup>**230 Consideration of other matters by SSSNB**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 18\(1\)](#), 82(3); [S.I. 2012/84](#), art. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

*Powers of Secretary of State on submission of SSSNB agreement*

**F210 231 Agreement submitted by SSSNB under section 229 or 230**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

*Reconsideration by SSSNB*

**F210 232 Reconsideration of agreement by SSSNB**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

**F210 233 SSSNB's submission of agreement following reconsideration: powers of Secretary of State**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

*Powers of Secretary of State in absence of SSSNB agreement*

**F210 234 Powers of Secretary of State in absence of SSSNB agreement**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

*Orders*

**F210 235 Effect of order ratifying SSSNB agreement**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

**F210** **236 Effect of order making provision otherwise than in terms of SSSNB agreement**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

**F210** **237 Orders: supplementary**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

*Guidance*

**F210** **238 Guidance**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

*General*

**F210** **239 Non-statutory School Support Staff Negotiating Body**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

**F210** **240 “School support staff”**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

### <sup>F210</sup>241 General interpretation

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F210** Ss. 227-241 repealed (1.2.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 18(1)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 3

## PART 11

### LEARNERS

#### *Power to search for prohibited items*

### 242 Power of members of staff to search pupils for prohibited items: England

(1) After section 550A of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) insert—

#### *“Powers to search pupils*

#### **550ZA Power of members of staff to search pupils for prohibited items: England**

- (1) This section applies where a member of staff of a school in England—
  - (a) has reasonable grounds for suspecting that a pupil at the school may have a prohibited item with him or her or in his or her possessions; and
  - (b) falls within section 550ZB(1).
- (2) The member of staff may search the pupil (“P”) or P’s possessions for that item.
- (3) For the purposes of this section and section 550ZC each of the following is a “prohibited item”—
  - (a) an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies (knives and blades etc);
  - (b) an offensive weapon, within the meaning of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953;
  - (c) alcohol, within the meaning of section 191 of the Licensing Act 2003;
  - (d) a controlled drug, within the meaning of section 2 of the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971, which section 5(1) of that Act makes it unlawful for P to have in P’s possession;
  - (e) a stolen article;
  - (f) an article of a kind specified in regulations.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) In subsection (3)(e) “stolen”, in relation to an article, has the same meaning as it has by virtue of section 24 of the Theft Act 1968 in the provisions of that Act relating to goods which have been stolen.
- (5) In this section and section 550ZB—
- “member of staff”, in relation to a school, means—
- (a) any teacher who works at the school; and
  - (b) any other person who, with the authority of the head teacher, has lawful control or charge of pupils for whom education is being provided at the school;
- “possessions”, in relation to P, includes any goods over which P has or appears to have control.
- (6) The powers conferred by this section and sections 550ZB and 550ZC are in addition to any powers exercisable by the member of staff in question apart from those sections and are not to be construed as restricting such powers.

#### **550ZB Power of search under section 550ZA: supplementary**

- (1) A person may carry out a search under section 550ZA only if that person—
- (a) is the head teacher of the school; or
  - (b) has been authorised by the head teacher to carry out the search.
- (2) An authorisation for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) may be given in relation to—
- (a) searches under section 550ZA generally;
  - (b) a particular search under that section;
  - (c) a particular description of searches under that section.
- (3) Nothing in any enactment, instrument or agreement shall be construed as authorising a head teacher of a school in England to require a person other than a member of the security staff of the school to carry out a search under section 550ZA.
- (4) A search under section 550ZA may be carried out only where—
- (a) the member of staff and P are on the premises of the school; or
  - (b) they are elsewhere and the member of staff has lawful control or charge of P.
- (5) A person exercising the power in section 550ZA may use such force as is reasonable in the circumstances for exercising that power.
- (6) A person carrying out a search of P under section 550ZA—
- (a) may not require P to remove any clothing other than outer clothing;
  - (b) must be of the same sex as P;
  - (c) may carry out the search only in the presence of another member of staff; and
  - (d) must ensure that the other member of staff is of the same sex as P if it is reasonably practicable to do so.
- (7) P's possessions may not be searched under section 550ZA except in the presence of—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) P; and
- (b) another member of staff.

(8) In this section—

“member of the security staff”, in relation to a school, means a member of staff whose work at the school consists wholly or mainly of security-related activities;

“outer clothing” means—

- (a) any item of clothing that is being worn otherwise than wholly next to the skin or immediately over a garment being worn as underwear; or
- (b) a hat, shoes, boots, gloves or a scarf.

### **550ZC Power to seize items found during search under section 550ZA**

(1) A person carrying out a search under section 550ZA may seize any of the following found in the course of the search—

- (a) anything which that person has reasonable grounds for suspecting is a prohibited item;
- (b) any other thing which that person has reasonable grounds for suspecting is evidence in relation to an offence.

(2) A person exercising the power in subsection (1) may use such force as is reasonable in the circumstances for exercising that power.

(3) A person who seizes alcohol under subsection (1) may retain or dispose of the alcohol and its container.

(4) A person who seizes a controlled drug under subsection (1)—

- (a) must (subject to paragraph (b)) deliver it to a police constable as soon as reasonably practicable; but
- (b) may dispose of it if the person thinks that there is a good reason to do so.

(5) A person who seizes a stolen article under subsection (1)—

- (a) must (subject to paragraph (b)) deliver it to a police constable as soon as reasonably practicable; but
- (b) may return it to its owner (or, if returning it to its owner is not practicable, may retain it or dispose of it) if the person thinks that there is a good reason to do so.

(6) In determining, for the purposes of subsections (4) and (5), whether there is a good reason to dispose of a controlled drug or to return a stolen article to its owner, retain it or dispose of it, the person must have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State.

(7) Regulations may prescribe what must or may be done by a person who, under subsection (1), seizes an article of a kind specified in regulations under section 550ZA(3)(f) (or an article which the person has reasonable grounds for suspecting to be such an article).

(8) A person who, under subsection (1), seizes—



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies (knives and blades etc);
- (b) an offensive weapon; or
- (c) anything which that person has reasonable grounds for suspecting is evidence in relation to an offence;

must deliver it to a police constable as soon as reasonably practicable.

- (9) Subsection (8)(c) is subject to subsections (3), (4) and (5) and regulations made under subsection (7).
- (10) In subsections (3) to (8), references to alcohol, a controlled drug, a stolen article, an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies and an offensive weapon include references to anything which the person has reasonable grounds for suspecting is alcohol, a controlled drug, a stolen article, an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies or an offensive weapon.

#### **550ZD Section 550ZC: supplementary**

- (1) The Police (Property) Act 1897 (disposal of property in the possession of the police) applies to property which has come into the possession of a police constable under section 550ZC(4)(a), (5)(a) or (8) as it applies to property which has come into the possession of the police in the circumstances mentioned in that Act.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies where a person—
  - (a) seizes, retains or disposes of alcohol or its container, a controlled drug or a stolen article under section 550ZC; and
  - (b) proves that the seizure, retention or disposal was lawful.
- (3) That person is not liable in any proceedings in respect of—
  - (a) the seizure, retention or disposal; or
  - (b) any damage or loss which arises in consequence of it.
- (4) Subsections (2) and (3) do not prevent any person from relying on any defence on which the person is entitled to rely apart from those subsections.
- (5) Regulations under section 550ZC(7) may make provision corresponding to any provision of this section.”
- (2) In section 569 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (regulations)—
  - (a) in subsection (2) after “this Act,” insert “ other than one falling within subsection (2A), ”, and
  - (b) after subsection (2) insert—

“(2A) A statutory instrument which contains (whether alone or with other provision) regulations under section 550ZA or 550ZC may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.”
- (3) In section 94(3) of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40) (provision to apply where items confiscated from pupils) before “550AA” insert “ 550ZC or ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I145** S. 242 in force at 1.9.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. 5](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#)) (as amended (26.7.2010) by [S.I. 2010/1891](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [art. 3](#)))

### 243 Power of members of staff to search pupils for weapons: Wales

- (1) Section 550AA of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (power of members of staff to search pupils for weapons) is amended as follows.
- (2) At the end of the title insert “ : Wales ”.
- (3) In each of subsections (1) and (4) after “a school” insert “ in Wales ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I146** S. 243 in force at 1.9.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. 5](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#)) (as amended (26.7.2010) by [S.I. 2010/1891](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [art. 3](#)))

### 244 Power of members of staff to search students for prohibited items: England

- (1) After section 85A of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13) insert—

“**85AA Power of members of staff to search students for prohibited items:  
England**

- (1) This section applies where a member of staff of an institution within the further education sector in England—
  - (a) has reasonable grounds for suspecting that a student at the institution may have a prohibited item with him or her or in his or her possessions; and
  - (b) falls within section 85AB(1).
- (2) The member of staff may search the student (“S”) or S's possessions for that item (but this is subject to subsection (5)).
- (3) For the purposes of this section and section 85AC each of the following is a “prohibited item”—
  - (a) an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies (knives and blades etc);
  - (b) an offensive weapon, within the meaning of the Prevention of Crime Act 1953;
  - (c) alcohol, within the meaning of section 191 of the Licensing Act 2003;
  - (d) a controlled drug, within the meaning of section 2 of the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971, which section 5(1) of that Act makes it unlawful for S to have in S's possession;
  - (e) a stolen article;
  - (f) an article of a kind specified in regulations.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (4) In subsection (3)(e) “stolen”, in relation to an article, has the same meaning as it has by virtue of section 24 of the Theft Act 1968 in the provisions of that Act relating to goods which have been stolen.
- (5) A member of staff may not under this section search S or S's possessions for alcohol if S is aged 18 or over.
- (6) In this section and section 85AB—
  - “member of staff”, in relation to an institution within the further education sector, means any person who works at that institution whether or not as its employee;
  - “possessions”, in relation to S, includes any goods over which S has or appears to have control.
- (7) The powers conferred by this section and sections 85AB and 85AC are in addition to any powers exercisable by the member of staff in question apart from those sections and are not to be construed as restricting such powers.

#### **85AB Power of search under section 85AA: supplementary**

- (1) A person may carry out a search under section 85AA only if that person—
  - (a) is the principal of the institution; or
  - (b) has been authorised by the principal to carry out the search.
- (2) An authorisation for the purposes of subsection (1)(b) may be given in relation to—
  - (a) searches under section 85AA generally;
  - (b) a particular search under that section;
  - (c) a particular description of searches under that section.
- (3) Nothing in any enactment, instrument or agreement shall be construed as authorising a principal of an institution within the further education sector in England to require a person other than a member of the security staff of the institution to carry out a search under section 85AA.
- (4) A search under section 85AA may be carried out only where—
  - (a) the member of staff and S are on the premises of the institution; or
  - (b) they are elsewhere and the member of staff has lawful control or charge of S.
- (5) A person exercising the power in section 85AA may use such force as is reasonable in the circumstances for exercising that power.
- (6) A person carrying out a search of S under section 85AA—
  - (a) may not require S to remove any clothing other than outer clothing;
  - (b) must be of the same sex as S;
  - (c) may carry out the search only in the presence of another member of staff; and
  - (d) must ensure that the other member of staff is of the same sex as S if it is reasonably practicable to do so.
- (7) S's possessions may not be searched under section 85AA except in the presence of—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) S; and
- (b) another member of staff.

(8) In this section—

“member of the security staff”, in relation to an institution, means a member of staff whose work at the institution consists wholly or mainly of security-related activities;

“outer clothing” means—

- (a) any item of clothing that is being worn otherwise than wholly next to the skin or immediately over a garment being worn as underwear; or
- (b) a hat, shoes, boots, gloves or a scarf.

### **85AC Power to seize items found during search under section 85AA**

- (1) A person carrying out a search under section 85AA may seize any of the following found in the course of the search—
  - (a) anything which that person has reasonable grounds for suspecting is a prohibited item;
  - (b) any other thing which that person has reasonable grounds for suspecting is evidence in relation to an offence,
 but may not seize alcohol from S under this section where S is aged 18 or over.
- (2) A person exercising the power in subsection (1) may use such force as is reasonable in the circumstances for exercising that power.
- (3) A person who seizes alcohol under subsection (1) may retain or dispose of the alcohol and its container.
- (4) A person who seizes a controlled drug under subsection (1)—
  - (a) must (subject to paragraph (b)) deliver it to a police constable as soon as reasonably practicable; but
  - (b) may dispose of it if the person thinks that there is a good reason to do so.
- (5) A person who seizes a stolen article under subsection (1)—
  - (a) must (subject to paragraph (b)) deliver it to a police constable as soon as reasonably practicable; but
  - (b) may return it to its owner (or, if returning it to its owner is not practicable, may retain it or dispose of it) if the person thinks that there is a good reason to do so.
- (6) In determining, for the purposes of subsections (4) and (5), whether there is a good reason to dispose of a controlled drug or to return a stolen article to its owner, retain it or dispose of it, the person must have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State.
- (7) Regulations may prescribe what must or may be done by a person who, under subsection (1), seizes an article of a kind specified in regulations under section 85AA(3)(f) (or an article which the person has reasonable grounds for suspecting to be such an article).
- (8) A person who, under subsection (1), seizes—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies (knives and blades etc);
- (b) an offensive weapon; or
- (c) anything which that person has reasonable grounds for suspecting is evidence in relation to an offence;

must deliver it to a police constable as soon as reasonably practicable.

- (9) Subsection (8)(c) is subject to subsections (3), (4) and (5) and regulations made under subsection (7).
- (10) In subsections (3) to (8), references to alcohol, a controlled drug, a stolen article, an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies and an offensive weapon include references to anything which a person has reasonable grounds for suspecting is alcohol, a controlled drug, a stolen article, an article to which section 139 of the Criminal Justice Act 1988 applies or an offensive weapon.

#### **85AD Section 85AC: supplementary**

- (1) The Police (Property) Act 1897 (disposal of property in the possession of the police) applies to property which has come into the possession of a police constable under section 85AC(4)(a), (5)(a) or (8) as it applies to property which has come into the possession of the police in the circumstances mentioned in that Act.
- (2) Subsection (3) applies where a person—
  - (a) seizes, retains or disposes of alcohol or its container, a controlled drug or a stolen article under section 85AC; and
  - (b) proves that the seizure, retention or disposal was lawful.
- (3) That person is not liable in any proceedings in respect of—
  - (a) the seizure, retention or disposal; or
  - (b) any damage or loss which arises in consequence of it.
- (4) Subsections (2) and (3) do not prevent any person from relying on any defence on which the person is entitled to rely apart from those subsections.
- (5) Regulations under section 85AC(7) may make provision corresponding to any provision of this section.”
- (2) In section 89 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13) (regulations etc)—
  - (a) in subsection (3) after “other than” insert “ one falling within subsection (3A) or ”, and
  - (b) after subsection (3) insert—
    - “(3A) A statutory instrument which contains (whether alone or with other provision) regulations under section 85AA or 85AC may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I147** S. 244 in force at 1.9.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. 5](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#)) (as amended (26.7.2010) by [S.I. 2010/1891](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [art. 3](#)))

### 245 Power of members of staff to search students for weapons: Wales

- (1) Section 85B of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (power to search further education students for weapons) is amended as follows.
- (2) At the end of the title insert “ : Wales ”.
- (3) In subsection (1) after “an institution within the further education sector” insert “ in Wales ”.

#### Commencement Information

**I148** S. 245 in force at 1.9.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), [art. 6](#), [Sch. 5](#) (with [arts. 9-11](#)) (as amended (26.7.2010) by [S.I. 2010/1891](#), [art. 2\(2\)](#) (with [art. 3](#)))

PROSPECTIVE

#### *Recording and reporting use of force*

### 246 Recording and reporting the use of force in schools: England

After section 93 of the Education and Inspections Act 2006 (c. 40) (power of members of staff to use force) insert—

#### **“93A Recording and reporting the use of force by members of staff: England**

- (1) The governing body of a school in England must ensure that a procedure is in place for—
  - (a) recording each significant incident in which a member of the staff uses force on a pupil for whom education is being provided at the school (a “use of force incident”); and
  - (b) reporting each use of force incident (except those where the pupil is aged 20 or over or provision made under subsection (5) applies) to each parent of the pupil as soon as practicable after the incident.
- (2) The governing body must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the procedure is complied with.
- (3) The procedure must require that a record of a use of force incident is made in writing as soon as practicable after the incident.
- (4) In discharging their duty under subsection (1), the governing body must have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State for the purposes of that subsection.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) A procedure under subsection (1) must include provision to the effect—
- (a) that a person (“R”) who would otherwise be required by the procedure to report an incident to a parent must not report it to that parent if it appears to R that doing so would be likely to result in significant harm to the pupil; and
  - (b) that if it appears to R that there is no parent of the pupil to whom R could report the incident without that being likely to result in significant harm to the pupil, R must report the incident to the local authority<sup>F211</sup> ... within whose area the pupil is ordinarily resident.
- (6) In deciding for the purposes of provision made under subsection (5) whether reporting an incident to a parent would be likely to result in significant harm to the pupil, R must have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State about the meaning of “significant harm” for those purposes.
- (7) In this section—
- “governing body”, in relation to a school which is not a maintained school, means the proprietor of the school;
  - “maintained school” means—
    - (a) a community, foundation or voluntary school;
    - (b) a community or foundation special school;
    - (c) a maintained nursery school;
  - “parent”, in relation to a pupil, has the meaning given by section 576 of EA 1996 in relation to a child or young person, but includes a local authority which provides accommodation for the pupil under section 20 of the Children Act 1989.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F211** Words in s. 246 repealed (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(12), [Sch. 3 Pt. 1](#)

#### 247 Recording and reporting the use of force in FE institutions: England

After section 85C of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (power of members of staff to use force) insert—

##### **“85D Recording and reporting the use of force by members of staff: England**

- (1) The governing body of an institution within the further education sector in England must ensure that a procedure is in place for—
- (a) recording each significant incident in which a member of the staff uses force on a student at the institution (a “use of force incident”); and
  - (b) reporting each use of force incident (except those where the student is aged 20 or over or provision made under subsection (5) applies) to each parent of the student as soon as practicable after the incident.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The governing body must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the procedure is complied with.
- (3) The procedure must require that a record of a use of force incident is made in writing as soon as practicable after the incident.
- (4) In discharging their duty under subsection (1), the governing body must have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State for the purposes of that subsection.
- (5) A procedure under subsection (1) must include provision to the effect—
  - (a) that a person (“R”) who would otherwise be required by the procedure to report an incident to a parent must not report it to that parent if it appears to R that doing so would be likely to result in significant harm to the student; and
  - (b) that if it appears to R that there is no parent of the student to whom R could report the incident without that being likely to result in significant harm to the student, R must report the incident to the local authority<sup>F212</sup> ... within whose area the student is ordinarily resident.
- (6) In deciding for the purposes of provision made under subsection (5) whether reporting an incident to a parent would be likely to result in significant harm to the student, R must have regard to any guidance issued by the Secretary of State about the meaning of “significant harm” for those purposes.
- (7) In this section, “parent”, in relation to a student, has the meaning given by section 576 of EA 1996 in relation to a child or young person, but includes a local authority which provides accommodation for the student under section 20 of the Children Act 1989.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F212** Words in s. 247 repealed (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(13), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1**

PROSPECTIVE

#### *School behaviour and attendance partnerships*

#### **<sup>F213</sup>248 Co-operation with a view to promoting good behaviour, etc.: England**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F213** S. 248 repealed (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. 6, 82(2)(a)



*Status:* Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## *[<sup>F214</sup>Pupil referral units ]*

### Textual Amendments

**F214** S. 249 cross-heading substituted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 51(3)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 2

## 249 [<sup>F215</sup>Regulations about pupil referral units ]

<sup>F216</sup>(1) .....

<sup>F216</sup>(2) .....

(3) After paragraph 3 of Schedule 1 to the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) (short stay schools: further provision) insert—

“3A Regulations may also—

- (a) require a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England to obtain the consent of the Secretary of State, in specified circumstances, to the closure of a short stay school;
- (b) confer a power on the Secretary of State to give directions to a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] in England about the exercise of—
  - (i) their functions under section 19;
  - (ii) their functions under any enactment applied to short stay schools (with or without modifications) by regulations under paragraph 3;
  - (iii) any other function connected with short stay schools;
- (c) require a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] to comply with such directions.”

### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**

**F215** S. 249 heading substituted (15.1.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 51(2)(b)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 2

**F216** S. 249(1)(2) omitted (15.1.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 51(2)(a)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/84, art. 2

### Commencement Information

**I149** S. 249(3) in force at 1.9.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 6, **Sch. 5** (with arts. 9-11) (as amended (26.7.2010) by [S.I. 2010/1891](#), art. 2(2) (with art. 3))

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART 12

### MISCELLANEOUS

PROSPECTIVE

#### *Careers education*

#### <sup>F217</sup> **250 Careers education in schools: England**

.....

##### **Textual Amendments**

**F217** S. 250 omitted (1.9.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 29(9)(d)**, 82(3); S.I. [2012/1087](#), art. 3

#### *Information about local authority expenditure*

#### **251 Information about planned and actual expenditure**

- (1) The Secretary of State may direct a local authority in England to provide information about its planned and actual expenditure in connection with—
  - (a) its education functions;
  - (b) its children's social services functions.
- (2) The Secretary of State may also direct a local authority in England to provide information about accountable resources held, received or expended by any person in relation to a school maintained by the authority.
- (3) Information to which a direction under this section relates must be provided in accordance with the direction.
- (4) A direction under this section may (in particular) include provision about—
  - (a) the period to which information is to relate;
  - (b) the form and manner in which information is to be provided;
  - (c) the persons to whom information is to be provided;
  - (d) the publication of information.
- (5) If a direction under this section requires information to be provided to a person other than the Secretary of State, the direction may also require that person to make the information available for inspection in accordance with the direction.

##### **Commencement Information**

**I150** S. 251 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## 252 Information about expenditure: supplementary

(1) This section applies for the purposes of section 251.

<sup>F218</sup>(2) .....

(3) The children's social services functions of a local authority in England are—

- (a) functions conferred on or exercisable by the authority which are social services functions, so far as those functions relate to children;
- (b) functions conferred on the authority under sections 23C to 24D of the Children Act 1989 (c. 41), so far as not within paragraph (a);
- (c) functions conferred on the authority <sup>F219</sup>... under sections 10 to 12, 12C, 12D and 17A of the Children Act 2004 (c. 31).

(4) “Accountable resources”, in relation to a school maintained by a local authority, means resources that are not provided by the authority [<sup>F220</sup>in the exercise of its education functions], but in respect of which an obligation is imposed on the school's governing body by virtue of regulations under section 44 of the Education Act 2002 (c. 32) (accounts of maintained schools).

(5) The Secretary of State may by order amend this section for one or more of the following purposes—

- [<sup>F221</sup>(za) specifying additional functions which are to be treated as education functions]
  - (a) adding to the functions that are <sup>F222</sup>... children's social services functions;
  - (b) removing or changing the description of functions that are education functions or children's social services functions.

(6) In this section—

<sup>F223</sup> ... <sup>F223</sup> ... <sup>F223</sup> ...

“social services functions” has the same meaning as in the Local Authority Social Services Act 1970 (c. 42) (see section 1A of that Act).

### Textual Amendments

**F218** S. 252(2) repealed (5.5.2010) by The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities (Integration of Functions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1158), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(14)(a), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1**

**F219** Words in s. 252(3)(c) repealed (5.5.2010) by The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities (Integration of Functions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1158), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(14)(b), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1**

**F220** Words in s. 252(4) substituted (5.5.2010) by The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities (Integration of Functions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1158), art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(14)(c)**

**F221** S. 252(5)(za) inserted (5.5.2010) by The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities (Integration of Functions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1158), art. 1, **Sch. 2 para. 16(14)(d)(i)**

**F222** Words in s. 252(5)(a) repealed (5.5.2010) by The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities (Integration of Functions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1158), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(14)(d)(ii), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1**

**F223** Words in s. 252(6) repealed (5.5.2010) by The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities (Integration of Functions) Order 2010 (S.I. 2010/1158), art. 1, Sch. 2 para. 16(14)(e), **Sch. 3 Pt. 1**

### Commencement Information

**I151** S. 252 in force at 12.1.2010 by S.I. 2009/3317, art. 2, **Sch.**

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 253 Information about expenditure: consequential amendments

- (1) The School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 52 (the title of which becomes “Financial statements: Wales”), in subsections (1) and (2) after “[<sup>F33</sup>local authority]” insert “ in Wales ”.
- (3) Omit section 53 (certification of statements by Audit Commission).

### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**

### Commencement Information

**I152** S. 253 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#) , art. 2, **Sch.**

## <sup>F224</sup>Qualifications

### Textual Amendments

**F224** S. 253A and preceding crossheading inserted (26.5.2015) by [Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015 \(c. 26\)](#) , **ss. 79(1)**, 164(3)(f)

## 253A Qualifications

- (1) A person in England may, in prescribed circumstances, provide student information of a prescribed description to—
  - (a) the Secretary of State,
  - (b) an information collator,
  - (c) a prescribed person, or
  - (d) a person falling within a prescribed category.
- (2) A person in Wales may, in prescribed circumstances, provide student information of a prescribed description to—
  - (a) the Welsh Ministers,
  - (b) an information collator,
  - (c) a prescribed person, or
  - (d) a person falling within a prescribed category.
- (3) In subsection (2) “prescribed” means prescribed in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.
- (4) Subject to subsection (5)(a), information received under or by virtue of this section is not to be published in any form which identifies the individual to whom it relates.
- (5) This section—
  - (a) does not affect any power to provide or publish information which exists apart from this section, and
  - (b) is subject to any express restriction on the provision of information imposed by another enactment.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(6) In this section—

“information collator” means any body which, for the purposes of or in connection with functions of the Secretary of State or the Welsh Ministers, is responsible for collating or checking information relating to regulated qualifications or relevant qualifications;

“regulated qualification” has the meaning given by section 130(1);

“relevant qualification” has the meaning given [<sup>F225</sup>to “qualification” by section 56 of the Qualifications Wales Act 2015] ;

“student information” means information (whether obtained under this section or otherwise) relating to an individual who is seeking or has sought to obtain, or has obtained, a regulated qualification or a relevant qualification]

#### Textual Amendments

**F225** Words in s. 253A(6) substituted (21.9.2015) by [Qualifications Wales Act 2015 \(anaw 5\)](#), s. 60(2), [Sch. 4 para. 9\(2\)](#); S.I. 2015/1687, art. 2 (with arts. 3-12)

### *Support for participation in education and training*

#### **254 Provision of social security information for purposes of functions under Education and Skills Act 2008**

- (1) The Education and Skills Act 2008 (c. 25) is amended as follows.
- (2) Omit section 15 (supply of social security information for purposes of Part 1).
- (3) Section 17 (sharing and use of information held for purposes of support services or functions under Part 1) is amended as follows.
- (4) In subsection (1), for “provide relevant information to each other” substitute “—
  - (a) provide relevant information to each other;
  - (b) make arrangements for the holding by either of them of information provided, or which could be provided, under paragraph (a).”
- (5) In subsection (7), in the definition of “relevant information”, after paragraph (b), insert—

“but does not include information provided under section 72 of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999;”.
- (6) At the end add—

“(9) Nothing in this section authorises the disclosure of any information in contravention of any provision of, or made under, this or any other Act (whenever passed or made) which prevents disclosure of the information.”
- (7) Section 76 (supply of social security information for purposes of support services) is amended as follows.
- (8) Omit subsection (1).
- (9) For subsections (3) and (4) substitute—

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- “(3) For the purposes of subsection (2), “personal information” in relation to a young person, means the person's name, address and date of birth.
- (3A) The Secretary of State may make arrangements with a person for the supply of social security information for the purposes of the provision of services for young persons in pursuance of section 68 or 70(1)(b).
- (3B) Social security information may be supplied to—
- (a) the Secretary of State, or
  - (b) a person providing services to the Secretary of State under subsection (3A).
- (3C) A person to whom social security information is supplied under subsection (3B) may supply the information to a [<sup>F33</sup>local authority] or other person involved in the provision of services for young persons or relevant young adults in pursuance of section 68 or 70(1)(b) for the purpose of the provision of those services.
- (3D) Information supplied to a person in reliance on subsection (3C) or this subsection may be supplied in accordance with, or with arrangements made under, section 17(1).
- (3E) Information supplied to a person in reliance on subsection (3B), (3C) or (3D) may be disclosed—
- (a) for the purpose of the provision of services in pursuance of section 68 or 70(1)(b),
  - (b) for the purpose of enabling or assisting the exercise of any function of a [<sup>F35</sup>local authority] under Part 1,
  - (c) in accordance with any provision of, or made under, any other Act,
  - (d) in accordance with an order of a court or tribunal,
  - (e) for the purpose of actual or contemplated proceedings before a court or tribunal,
  - (f) with consent given by or on behalf of the person to whom the information relates, or
  - (g) in such a way as to prevent the identification of the person to whom it relates.
- (4) It is an offence for a person to disclose restricted information otherwise than in accordance with this section.
- (4A) For the purposes of subsection (4), “restricted information”, in relation to a person, means information that was disclosed to the person—
- (a) in reliance on subsection (3B), (3C) or (3D), or
  - (b) in circumstances that constitute an offence under this section.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in Act substituted (5.5.2010) by [The Local Education Authorities and Children's Services Authorities \(Integration of Functions\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/1158\)](#) , **Sch. 2 para. 16(2)**

#### Commencement Information

**I153** S. 254 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), art. 2, **Sch.**

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 255 Provision of other information in connection with support services

(1) The Education and Skills Act 2008 (c. 25) is amended as follows.

<sup>F226</sup>(2) .....

(3) After section 76 insert—

### “76A Supply of information by Secretary of State or person providing services

- (1) The Secretary of State may make arrangements with any other person for the holding and supply of information in connection with, or for the purposes of, the provision of services in pursuance of section 68 or 70(1)(b).
- (2) In this section “relevant information”, in relation to a person by whom services are provided under section 68 or 70(1)(b), means information which—
  - (a) is obtained by a person involved in the provision of those services in, or in connection with, the provision of those services,
  - (b) relates to a person for whom those services are provided;but does not include information provided under section 72 of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999.
- (3) Relevant information may be supplied to—
  - (a) the Secretary of State, or
  - (b) a person providing services to the Secretary of State under this section.
- (4) Information supplied under subsection (3) may be supplied to any person involved in the provision of services in pursuance of section 68 or 70(1)(b) for the purposes of the provision of those services.
- (5) Except as provided by subsection (4), information supplied in reliance on subsection (3) must not be disclosed in such a way that the identity of the individual is disclosed to, or capable of being discovered by, the person to whom it is disclosed.
- (6) Nothing in this section authorises the disclosure of any information in contravention of any provision of, or made under, this or any other Act (whenever passed or made) which prevents disclosure of the information.”

#### Textual Amendments

**F226** S. 255(2) omitted (1.9.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 28(6)**, 82(3); [S.I. 2012/1087](#), **art. 3**

#### Commencement Information

**I154** S. 255 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), **art. 2**, **Sch.**

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### *Further education corporations*

#### **256 Further education corporations in England: co-operation and promotion of well-being**

- (1) The Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13) is amended as follows.
- (2) In section 19 (supplementary powers of a further education corporation), after subsection (8) add—

“(9) A further education corporation may provide advice or assistance to any other person where it appears to the corporation to be appropriate for them to do so for the purpose of or in connection with the provision of education by the other person.”

<sup>F227</sup>(3) .....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F227** S. 256(3) omitted (1.4.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 12 para. 46\(2\)](#); [S.I. 2012/924](#), art. 2

#### **Commencement Information**

**I155** S. 256 in force at 1.4.2010 by [S.I. 2010/303](#), art. 3, [Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11)

### *Student loans*

#### **257 Student loans under the 1998 Act: IVAs**

- (1) The Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (c. 30) is amended as set out in subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) In section 22(3) (new arrangements for giving financial support to students), after paragraph (f) insert—
- “(g) with respect to sums which a borrower receives, or is entitled to receive, under such a loan before or after a voluntary arrangement under Part 8 of the Insolvency Act 1986 or Part 8 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (individual voluntary arrangements) takes effect in respect of the borrower;
- (h) excluding or modifying the application of Part 8 of that Act, or Part 8 of that Order, in relation to liability to make repayments in respect of such a loan (whether the repayments relate to sums which the borrower receives, or is entitled to receive, before or after a voluntary arrangement takes effect in respect of the borrower).”
- (3) In section 46(8) (provisions extending to Northern Ireland), in the entry relating to section 22, for “(3)(e) or (f)” substitute “(3)(e), (f), (g) or (h)”.
- (4) Nothing in this section affects a voluntary arrangement that takes effect before this section comes into force.



*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Commencement Information

**I156** S. 257 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), art. 2, Sch.

### 258 Student loans under the 1990 Act: IVAs and bankruptcy

(1) Subsections (2) to (5) have effect in relation to the Education (Student Loans) Act 1990 (c. 6) to the extent that that Act continues in force by virtue of any savings made, in connection with its repeal by the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 (c. 30), by an order under section 46(4) of that Act.

(2) In Schedule 2 (loans for students), in paragraph 5(1) for “or 310” substitute “ , 310 or 310A ”.

(3) In Schedule 2, after paragraph 5 insert—

“5A (1) This paragraph applies to a sum by way of public sector student loan or subsidised private sector student loan that a person (“the debtor”) receives or is entitled to receive before or after a voluntary arrangement under Part 8 of the Insolvency Act 1986 takes effect in respect of the debtor.

(2) The sum is to be ignored for the purposes of the voluntary arrangement.

5B (1) Part 8 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (individual voluntary arrangements) has effect in relation to a student loan debt with the following modifications.

(2) A student loan debt is to be treated as not included among the debtor's debts.

(3) A person to whom a student loan debt is owed is to be treated as not being one of the debtor's creditors.

(4) A “student loan debt” is a debt or liability to which a debtor is or may become subject in respect of a public sector student loan or subsidised private sector student loan.”

(4) In Schedule 2, after paragraph 6 insert—

#### “Insolvency: Northern Ireland

7 (1) There shall not be treated as part of a bankrupt's estate or claimed for his estate under article 280 or 283 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 any sums to which this paragraph applies that the bankrupt receives or is entitled to receive after the commencement of the bankruptcy.

(2) No debt or liability to which a bankrupt is or may become subject in respect of a sum to which this paragraph applies shall be included in the bankrupt's bankruptcy debts.

(3) This paragraph applies to a sum by way of public sector student loan or subsidised private sector student loan payable to the bankrupt

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

pursuant to an agreement entered into by the bankrupt before or after the commencement of the bankruptcy.

8 (1) This paragraph applies to a sum by way of public sector student loan or subsidised private sector student loan that a person (“the debtor”) receives or is entitled to receive before or after a voluntary arrangement under Part 8 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 takes effect in respect of the debtor.

(2) The sum is to be ignored for the purposes of the voluntary arrangement.

9 (1) Part 8 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (individual voluntary arrangements) has effect in relation to a student loan debt with the following modifications.

(2) A student loan debt is to be treated as not included among the debtor's debts.

(3) A person to whom a student loan debt is owed is to be treated as not being one of the debtor's creditors.

(4) A “student loan debt” is a debt or liability to which a debtor is or may become subject in respect of a public sector student loan or subsidised private sector student loan.”

(5) In section 4, for subsection (4) (extent) substitute—

“(4) This Act does not extend to Northern Ireland, with the following exceptions—

(a) section 1, so far as necessary for the purpose of defining “public sector student loan” and “subsidised private sector student loan”;

(b) section 2;

(c) as respects institutions in Northern Ireland, the power to make regulations under paragraph 2 of Schedule 2;

(d) paragraphs 7 to 9 of Schedule 2.”

(6) Nothing in this section affects a voluntary arrangement that takes effect, or a bankruptcy that commences, before this section comes into force.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I157** S. 258 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), art. 2, [Sch.](#)

#### *Foundation degrees: Wales*

### **259 Power to award foundation degrees: Wales**

(1) In section 76(1)(b) of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 (c. 13) (power of Privy Council to specify further education institutions in England that may award foundation degrees) omit “in England”.

(2) Within the period of four years beginning with the commencement of subsection (1) of this section, the Welsh Ministers must lay before the National Assembly for Wales a report about its effect.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Commencement Information

**I158** S. 259 in force at 1.10.2010 by [S.I. 2010/2413](#), **art. 2(c)** (with [arts. 3-5](#))

PROSPECTIVE

### *Complaints: Wales*

#### **260 Complaints: Wales**

- (1) Section 29 of the Education Act 2002 (c. 32) (additional functions of governing body) is amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1) after “maintained school” insert “ in England ”.
- (3) In subsection (2) for the words from “(in relation to England)” to the end substitute “ by the Secretary of State ”.
- (4) After subsection (2) insert—
  - “(2A) The Welsh Ministers may make regulations establishing procedures in relation to relevant complaints.
  - (2B) For the purposes of subsection (2A), a “relevant complaint” is a complaint which relates to a maintained school in Wales, or to the provision of facilities or services under section 27 by the governing body of such a school, other than a complaint which falls to be dealt with in accordance with any procedures required to be established in relation to the school by virtue of a statutory provision other than this section.
  - (2C) Where the Welsh Ministers establish procedures by regulations under subsection (2A), the governing body of a maintained school in Wales shall—
    - (a) adopt the procedures, and
    - (b) publicise them in the way specified in the regulations.
  - (2D) In adopting or publicising procedures established by virtue of subsection (2A), the governing body shall have regard to any guidance given from time to time by the Welsh Ministers.”

### *Local Government Act 1974*

#### **261 Local Government Act 1974: minor amendment**

In paragraph 5(2) of Schedule 5 to the Local Government Act 1974 (c. 7) (exclusion of matters relating to teaching etc. in any school maintained by local authority), after “authority” insert “, except so far as relating to special educational needs (within the meaning given by section 312 of the Education Act 1996) ”.

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Commencement Information**

**I159** S. 261 in force at 12.1.2010 by [S.I. 2009/3317](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#)

**PART 13**

GENERAL

**262 Orders and regulations**

- (1) A power to make an order or regulations under Chapter 1 of Part 1, or Part 3 or 4 [<sup>F228</sup>, or section 253A] —
  - (a) so far as exercisable by the Secretary of State, the Welsh Ministers or the Scottish Ministers, is exercisable by statutory instrument;
  - (b) so far as exercisable by the Department for Employment and Learning in Northern Ireland, is exercisable by statutory rule for the purposes of the Statutory Rules (Northern Ireland) Order 1979 (S.I. 1979/1573 (N.I. 12)).

(2) Any other power of the Secretary of State to make an order or regulations under this Act is exercisable by statutory instrument.

- (3) A power of the Secretary of State or the Welsh Ministers to make an order or regulations under this Act (except a power conferred by section 17, 22 or 269) includes power—
  - (a) to make different provision for different purposes (including different areas);
  - (b) to make provision generally or in relation to specific cases;
  - (c) to make incidental, consequential, supplementary, transitional, transitory or saving provision.

[<sup>F229</sup>(3A) An order under section 83A(12) may amend, repeal or revoke any provision of, or in an instrument made under, this or any other Act.]

<sup>F230</sup>(4) .....

(5) Subject to subsections (6) to (8), a statutory instrument containing an order or regulations made by the Secretary of State under any provision of this Act (other than an order under section 269) is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

(6) A statutory instrument which contains (whether alone or with other provision) any of the following may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament—

- [<sup>F231</sup>(za) the first regulations under section A9;
- (zb) the first regulations under section A10;]
- (aa) regulations under section 1(5);
- [<sup>F232</sup>(aaa) regulations under section 40B;]
- [<sup>F233</sup>(aab) regulations under section ZA5;]
- [<sup>F234</sup>(ab) an order under section 83A(12);]
- (b) an order under section 88 or paragraph 9 of Schedule 5;
- <sup>F235</sup>(c) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) an order under section 130(5);
  - (e) an order under section 141(1);
  - <sup>F236</sup>(ea) an order under section 151B(2);
  - <sup>F237</sup>(f) .....
  - (g) an order under section 252(5);
  - (h) an order under section 265 which amends or repeals any provision of an Act.
- (7) Subsections (5) and (6) do not apply to a statutory instrument which contains only—
- (a) an order revoking an order under section 141(1), or
  - (b) an order amending an order under section 141(1) for the purpose only of removing a qualification or description of qualification from the application of the order.
- (8) A statutory instrument within subsection (7) must be laid before Parliament.
- (9) Subject to subsection (10), a statutory instrument containing an order or regulations made by the Welsh Ministers under Chapter 1 of Part 1 (other than an order under section 10) or under section 68 [<sup>F238</sup>, 107 or 253A] is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the National Assembly for Wales.
- (10) A statutory instrument which contains (whether alone or with other provision) regulations under section 2(5) may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, the National Assembly for Wales.
- (11) A statutory instrument containing an order made by the Scottish Ministers under section 68 or 107 is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the Scottish Parliament.
- (12) A statutory rule containing an order made by the Department for Employment and Learning in Northern Ireland under section 68 or 107 is to be subject to negative resolution within the meaning of section 41(6) of the Interpretation Act (Northern Ireland) 1954 (c. 33 (N.I.)) as if it were a statutory instrument within the meaning of that Act.
- (13) If a draft of an instrument containing an order under paragraph 9 of Schedule 5 would, apart from this subsection, be treated for the purposes of the Standing Orders of either House of Parliament as a hybrid instrument, it is to proceed in that House as if it were not a hybrid instrument.

#### Textual Amendments

**F228** Words in s. 262(1) inserted (26.5.2015) by [Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015](#) (c. 26), **ss. 79(2)(a), 164(3)(f)**

**F229** S. 262(3A) inserted (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011](#) (c. 21), s. 82(3), **Sch. 18 para. 13(2)**; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F230** S. 262(4) omitted (1.9.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011](#) (c. 21), s. 82(3), **Sch. 18 para. 13(3)**; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

**F231** S. 262(6)(za)(zb) inserted (4.7.2016) by [Enterprise Act 2016](#) (c. 12), **ss. 24(2), 44(2)(c)**

**F232** S. 262(6)(aaa) inserted (4.7.2016) by [Enterprise Act 2016](#) (c. 12), **ss. 26(2), 44(5)**; S.I. 2016/695, art. 2(a)

**F233** S. 262(6)(aab) inserted (1.4.2017) by [Enterprise Act 2016](#) (c. 12), s. 44(5), **Sch. 4 para. 8**; S.I. 2017/346, reg. 2(a)

**F234** S. 262(6)(ab) inserted (1.9.2012) by [Education Act 2011](#) (c. 21), s. 82(3), **Sch. 18 para. 13(4)(a)**; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F235** S. 262(6)(c) omitted (1.9.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), **Sch. 18 para. 13(4)(b)**; S.I. 2012/1087, art. 3
- F236** S. 262(6)(ea) inserted (1.5.2012) by [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 23(7)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/924, art. 3
- F237** S. 262(6)(f) omitted (1.8.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 45(2)(f)**, 82(3); S.I. 2012/1087, art. 2 (with art. 6)
- F238** Words in s. 262(9) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015 \(c. 26\)](#), **ss. 79(2)(b)**, 164(3)(f)

## 263 Directions

A direction given under this Act—

- (a) may be amended or revoked by the person or body by whom it is given;
- (b) may make different provision for different purposes.

## 264 General interpretation of Act

- (1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires—
  - “prescribed” means prescribed by regulations;
  - “regulations” means regulations made by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Subject to subsections (4) and (5), the Education Act 1996 (c. 56) and the provisions of this Act specified in subsection (3) are to be construed as if those provisions were contained in that Act.
- (3) The provisions are—
  - (a) Parts 3, 4 and 5;
  - (b) Parts 7 and 8;
  - (c) Chapter 4 of Part 10;
  - (d) sections 248, 251 and 252.
- (4) Section 562 of the Education Act 1996 (Act not to apply to certain persons detained under order of a court) does not apply to functions of the Secretary of State under Part 4.
- (5) If—
  - (a) an expression is given a meaning for the purposes of a provision within subsection (3) (its “local meaning”), and
  - (b) that meaning is different from the meaning given to it for the purposes of the Education Act 1996 (its “1996 Act meaning”),
 the expression's local meaning applies instead of its 1996 Act meaning.
- (6) Unless the context otherwise requires, a reference in this Act to—
  - (a) a community, foundation or voluntary school, or
  - (b) a community or foundation special school,
 is to such a school within the meaning of the School Standards and Framework Act 1998 (c. 31).

## 265 Power to make consequential and transitional provision etc.

- (1) The Secretary of State may by order make—
  - (a) such supplementary, incidental or consequential provision, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) such transitory, transitional or saving provision,  
as the Secretary of State thinks appropriate for the general purposes, or any particular purpose, of this Act or in consequence of, or for giving full effect to, any provision made by this Act.
- (2) An order under this section may in particular—
- (a) provide for any provision of this Act which comes into force before another provision made by or under this or any other Act has come into force to have effect, until that other provision has come into force, with specified modifications;
- (b) amend, repeal, revoke or otherwise modify any provision of—
- (i) an Act passed before or in the same Session as this Act, or
- (ii) an instrument made under an Act before the passing of this Act.
- (3) Nothing in this section limits the powers conferred by section 262(3)(c) or 269(8)(b).
- (4) The amendments that may be made by virtue of subsection (2)(b) are in addition to those that are made by any other provision of this Act.

## 266 Repeals and revocations

Schedule 16 contains repeals and revocations (including repeals and revocations of spent provisions).

### Commencement Information

- I160** S. 266 in force at 12.1.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2009/3317, art. 2, Sch.](#)
- I161** S. 266 in force at 1.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/1151, art. 2, Sch. 1](#)
- I162** S. 266 in force at 1.4.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/303, art. 3, Sch. 2](#) (with arts. 9-11, 13, 14) (as amended (30.3.2010) by [S.I. 2010/1151, art. 22](#))
- I163** S. 266 in force at 1.11.2010 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2010/2413, art. 2\(b\)](#) (with arts. 3-5)
- I164** S. 266 in force at 31.5.2013 for specified purposes by [S.I. 2013/975, art. 2\(b\)](#)

## 267 Financial provisions

- (1) There are to be paid out of money provided by Parliament—
- (a) any expenditure incurred by virtue of this Act by the Secretary of State,
- (b) any expenditure incurred by virtue of this Act by the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation, and
- (c) any increase attributable to this Act in the sums payable by virtue of any other Act out of money provided by Parliament.
- (2) Any sums received by the Secretary of State by virtue of [<sup>F239</sup>Chapter A1] of Part 1, section 78(3)(c), paragraph 18(3)(d) of Schedule 3 or paragraph 6(3)(d) of Schedule 4 are to be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

### Textual Amendments

- F239** Words in s. 267(2) substituted (26.5.2015) by [Deregulation Act 2015 \(c. 20\), s. 115\(7\), Sch. 1 para. 23; S.I. 2015/994, art. 6\(a\)](#) (with Sch. Pt. 2)

*Status: Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 268 Extent

- (1) This Act extends to England and Wales only, subject to subsections (2) to (4).
- (2) [<sup>F240</sup>Section 40, Part 1A, sections] 68, 69, 107, 108 and this Part also extend to Scotland.
- (3) [<sup>F241</sup>Part 1A, sections] 68, 70, 107, 109, Part 7, sections 257 and 258 and this Part also extend to Northern Ireland.
- (4) An amendment, repeal or revocation made by this Act has the same extent as the provision to which it relates.

### Textual Amendments

**F240** Words in s. 268(2) substituted (4.7.2016) by Enterprise Act 2016 (c. 12), ss. 26(3)(a), 44(5); S.I. 2016/695, art. 2(a)

**F241** Words in s. 268(3) substituted (4.7.2016) by Enterprise Act 2016 (c. 12), ss. 26(3)(b), 44(5); S.I. 2016/695, art. 2(a)

## 269 Commencement

- (1) This Part (except section 266) comes into force on the day on which this Act is passed.
- (2) The following provisions of this Act come into force at the end of two months beginning with the day on which this Act is passed—
  - (a) section 58 (and the associated entries in Schedule 16);
  - (b) sections 198 to 201.
- (3) The following provisions of this Act come into force on such day as the Welsh Ministers may by order appoint—
  - (a) sections 2 and 7 to 10;
  - (b) sections 11 and 12, so far as relating to Wales;
  - (c) sections 18 to 22;
  - (d) sections 28 to 31;
  - (e) section 39, so far as relating to Wales;
  - (f) sections 48 to 52, so far as relating to Wales;
  - (g) paragraphs 54 to 56 of Schedule 6, so far as relating to Wales;
  - (h) paragraphs 11, 13 and 27 of Schedule 12, so far as relating to Wales (and the associated entries in Schedule 16);
  - (i) paragraphs 14 to 19 and 29 of Schedule 12 (and the associated entries in Schedule 16);
  - (j) sections 174 and 192 so far as they relate to the paragraphs of Schedule 12 mentioned in paragraphs (h) and (i);
  - (k) section 205 and Schedule 14;
  - (l) section 259 (and the associated entry in Schedule 16);
  - (m) section 260;
  - (n) section 266, so far as it relates to the entries in Schedule 16 mentioned in paragraphs (h), (i) and (l).



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(4) The other provisions of this Act come into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint.

<sup>F242</sup>(5) .....

(6) Before making an order under subsection (4) bringing into force any provision of Part 7 which confers functions on the Office of Qualifications and Examinations Regulation in relation to Northern Ireland, the Secretary of State must consult the Department for Employment and Learning in Northern Ireland.

(7) The powers conferred by this section are exercisable by statutory instrument.

(8) An order under this section may—

- (a) appoint different days for different purposes (including different areas);
- (b) contain transitional, transitory or saving provision in connection with the coming into force of this Act.

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F242** S. 269(5) omitted (1.9.2012) by virtue of [Education Act 2011 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 82(3), [Sch. 18 para. 14](#); [S.I. 2012/1087](#), art. 3

**270 Short title**

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009.
- (2) This Act is to be included in the list of Education Acts set out in section 578 of the Education Act 1996 (c. 56).

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 16/08/2017. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:**

Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 21 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.